

新东方学校英语文库

英语语法新思维

中级教程——通悟语法



张满胜 编著

Intermediate

世界知识出版社

张满胜 编著

NEW PERSPECTIVE GRAMMAR

英语语法新思维

中级教程——通悟语法

世界知识出版社

图书在版编目 (CIP) 数据

英语语法新思维中级教程: 通悟语法 / 张满胜编著. 北京: 世界知识出版社, 2002.4

ISBN 7-5012-1715-7

I. 英… II. 张… III. 英语-语法-教材 IV. H314

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字 (2002) 第 021248 号

责任编辑 / 刘 岩

封面设计 / 文 敏

责任出版 / 王勇刚

责任校对 / 陈可望

出版发行 / 世界知识出版社

地址电话 / 北京市东城区干面胡同 51 号 (010) 65265933

E-mail: gcgjz@public.bta.net.cn

邮政编码 / 100010

经 销 / 新华书店

排 版 / 世界知识出版社电脑科

印 刷 / 北京科技印刷厂

开本印张 / 850×1168 1/32 10¼印张 260 千字

版 次 / 2002 年 4 月第一版 2002 年 4 月第一次印刷

定 价 / 19.00 元

版权所有 翻印必究

新东方丛书策划委员会

总策划 包凡一 胡 敏

委员会 (按姓氏笔划为序)

王 强 王文成

包凡一 杜子华

周成刚 杨 继

胡 敏 俞敏洪

徐小平



★ 语法即是造句规则。学习语法有两个目的：首先，便于我们读懂句子；其次，教会我们造句。

★ 语法不是“死”的造句规则，而是“活”的语言思维。

一般语法书都是只讲“死”的规则，而不去追究规则背后的合乎逻辑的语法思维。致使很多英语学习者花费了大量的时间学英语，学语法，记死规则，最后又很快遗忘，终难修成英语正果。本套书力求不仅告诉你规则“是什么”，而且还要告诉你规则背后的“为什么”。从而达到既掌握规则又培养了英文思维的目的。

★ 《英语语法新思维》“新”在何处？

新理念：

笔者提出语法即思维的全新理念，并将这一理念贯穿于整个语法书创作的始终。语言是

人们进行思维的载体，语法作为语言遣词造句的规则，体现了用语者的思维。

新体系：

本套书不再像传统语法书那样，以词法和句法两条主线对英语语法进行“大而全”的、包罗万象的规则罗列。本套书注重实用，循序渐进，科学地分为三级。具体思路体系安排如下：

初级：以动词和名词作为两大主线，介绍英文主要词类的正确使用，让读者能熟练构造简单句，以及对各种主要词类能够运用自如。

中级：以动词和从句作为两大主线，重点是让读者熟练构造复合句，能够分析和读懂复杂的句子，并进而使读者下笔时不再是通篇的简单句，而是开始能较灵活地把握句子的构造。

高级：以动词和从句作为两大主线，重点是让读者更深入地比较各种复合句的特点，并掌握复合句与简单句之间的转化。教会读者征服复杂难句，简化复杂从句，做到使句子返璞归真。

新角度：

笔者一直力图从全新的角度对传统的语法规则进行阐述，目的是为了**使复杂规则易学易用**。比如，对于“名词从句”，笔者表述思路是：名词从句本质即是把句子当作名词来用。

名词在句中可充当四种成分：主语、宾语、表语和同位语，因此，我们同样可用一个完整句子来充当另一句子的四种成分，于是便有了主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句这四种名词从句。问题关键是：我们可用三种句子（陈述句、一般疑问句和特殊疑问句）来分别充当这四种成分。于是，把传统的介绍繁杂的连词用法转化为三种句子充当四种成分即构成名词从句。

新例句：

规则毕竟是为语言服务的，精炼、明晰的规则披上美丽的语言外衣，使语法学习不再是枯燥乏味的死记硬背，而是妙趣横生、驾轻就熟的语言实践。因此，笔者在例句的选择上真可谓煞费苦心，注重幽默性、知识性、思想性，使读者在欣赏语言之美的同时掌握语言表达规则。

本套书的出版背后凝结了众多人的辛勤劳动。在此，特别感谢北京新东方教育科技有限公司俞敏洪总裁、王强董事长，新东方图书事业部包凡一主任在此书的出版过程中给予的大力支持。特别感谢世界知识出版社王义成主任，责任编辑刘晔、张雅坤在本书的策划、编辑和版式上提出的宝贵建议及付出的辛勤劳动。

本书是笔者在语法领域内研究的初步成果，水平有限，疏漏错误在所难免。读者永远是最终的裁判。我真诚地希望，读者朋友在阅读过程中

若有疑问，或者对此书有任何建议，能够及时与我联系，我的电子信箱：

zhangmansheng@hotmail.com

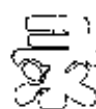
感谢您选读此书！

张满胜

2002 年 3 月

新东方学校英语语法培训创始人张满胜,从事过多年的英语翻译和教学工作。在长期的英语实践过程中,他突破传统语法教学,提出“语法即是思维”的全新语法理念,使学习语法不再是记“死”规则,而是培养“活”的英语思维。著有《英语语法新思维》一书,该书在2000年《21世纪英语报》全国外文畅销书排行榜中,在语法类书目中名列第二。现推出的这套系列语法专著,包括《英语语法新思维——走近语法》、《英语语法新思维——通悟语法》、《英语语法新思维——驾驭语法》,是他历经十多年潜心研究的力作。





第一章 英语句子分析	1
1. 主语 + 谓语动词(+ 状语)	1
2. 主语 + 系动词 + 主语补足语(也称作表语)	2
3. 主语 + 谓语 + 宾语	5
4. 主语 + 谓语 + 双宾语	5
5. 主语 + 谓语 + 宾语 + 复合宾语	7
6. 陈述句	8
7. 疑问句	8
8. 祈使句	11
9. 感叹句	11
 第二章 名词从句	21
10. 四类名词从句	21
11. 二种句子来充当四种成分	22
12. 陈述句可分别充当四种句子成分	23
13. 一般疑问句可分别充当四种句子成分 ...	29
14. 特殊疑问句可分别充当四种句子成分 ...	30

第三章 定语从句	43
15. 定语从句概说	43
16. 先行词指人,用关系代词 who, whom	45
17. 表示人或物的所有关系,用 whose	47
18. 先行词指物,用关系代词 which	48
19. that 可以指代人,也可以指代物	49
20. 在从句中作宾语的关系代词可以省去	51
21. when 的用法	52
22. where 的用法	53
23. why 的用法	54
24. 不用逗号隔开——限制性定语从句	55
25. 用逗号隔开——非限制性定语从句	56
26. 用或不用逗号隔开句义有差别	56
27. that 引导定语从句和同位语从句的区别	58
第四章 状语从句	83
28. 状语从句概述	83
29. 状语从句的省略	84
30. 时间状语从句	85
31. 地点状语从句	88
32. 原因状语从句	89
33. 目的与结果状语从句	91
34. 条件状语从句	93
35. 让步状语从句	93
36. 比较状语从句	95
37. 方式状语从句	97

第五章 时态(一):完成时态	113
38. 现在完成时态概述	114
39. 现在完成时态用法(一):延续到现在的 动作或状态	115
40. 与现在完成时态搭配的时间状语	116
41. 现在完成时态用法(二):过去发生但与 现在仍有联系的动作或状态	118
42. 第二种现在完成时态使用技巧	120
43. 现在完成时态用法(三):到目前的一个 时间段内重复发生的动作	123
44. 其他使用现在完成时的结构	126
45. 现在完成时与一般过去时比较	127
46. 过去完成时	129
47. 一般过去时与过去完成时的比较	133
48. 将来完成动作的开始时间	135
49. 将来完成时	136
第六章 时态(二):完成进行时	146
50. 完成进行时态概述	147
51. 完成进行用法(一):到现在 仍然在延续的动作	148
52. 与现在完成时比较(一)	149
53. 与现在完成时比较(二)	151
54. 完成进行用法(二):刚刚结束的动作	152
55. 完成进行用法(三):重复发生的动作	153
56. 与现在完成时比较(三)	154
57. 与现在完成时比较(四)	156
58. 过去完成进行时	157
59. 将来完成进行时	159

第七章 动词不定式	175
60. 作主语 “It+ to do sth” 句型	175
61. 作宾语: 动词+ to do	176
62. 作宾语补足语: 动词+ sb to do sth	177
63. 作定语: 名词+ to do sth	178
64. 作独立成分	179
65. 作目的状语	180
66. 作结果状语	180
67. 形容词后的不定式	182
68. 一些动词的复合宾语中 to 省去	184
69. 一些短语句型中 to 省去	185
70. Do nothing/anything/everything but do 句型中 to 省去	185
第八章 动名词	196
71. 用作主语	196
72. 一些动词后只能用动名词作宾语	198
73. 接动名词和接动词不定式有区别的 动词	198
74. 其他用动名词的结构	201
75. 动名词复合结构构成: my doing/Tom's doing	202
76. 动名词复合语结构用法	203
第九章 被动语态	215
77. 被动语态的构成	215
78. 被动语态中的介词 by 通常不要	216
79. 不及物动词没有被动语态	218

80. 间接宾语用作被动语态的主语	218
81. 静态被动形式	219
82. Get 与被动语态	219
83. have/get sth done	220
 第十章 情态动词	230
84. 情态动词概述	230
85. 表示能力或可能 ability/possibility	231
86. 表示许可 permission (给予允许)	234
87. 表示请求 request	236
88. 表示必须 necessity	238
89. 表示忠告 advisability 或责任 obligation	239
90. 表示建议 making suggestions	239
91. shall 的用法	240
92. 表示意愿 volition	241
93. 表示过去重复动作 would/used to	241
94. 表示推测	243
95. 情态动词与完成式	246
 第十一章 限定词	265
96. 数量形容词 some/any	266
97. 个体形容词 each/every	267
98. 个体形容词 another/other	270
99. 个体形容词 either/neither	272
100. 限定词与名词的搭配	274
101. 限定词之间的位置搭配 (三种限定词)	275
102. 限定词与形容词的区别	278

第十二章 主谓一致	290
103. 单数形式的名词作主语与谓语动词	
形式的关系	290
104. 复数形式的名词作主语与谓语动词	
形式的关系	292
105. 并列主语与谓语动词形式的关系	294
106. 在 of 结构中谓语动词的单复数	298
107. 从句中的主谓一致问题	300

英语句子分析

第一节 句子结构类型

英语句子按其结构复杂程度可分为：简单句、并列句和复合句。

下面我们具体讨论简单句的五种基本句型。（重点掌握——分析句子结构的基础）

在初级语法课我们讨论过这五种基本句型，在这里我们将更加全面、深刻认识这五种句型，并要求能够利用这些基本句型熟练分析和简化复杂的句子结构。

I. 主语 + 谓语动词 (+ 状语)

Subject + Intransitive Verb

此句型特点：既然该句型中动词后面不带宾语，所以用于此句型的动词应该是不及物动词。

a. Man *proposes*; God *disposes*. 谋事在人，成事在天。

- b. Modesty *benefits*; pride *hurts*. 谦受益, 满招损
- c. The sun *rises* and the sun *sets*. Stars *glitter* and stars *vanish*. There are ups and downs in everyone's life. 日升日落, 星闪星陨。人生难免都会有起有落。

这种句型谓语动词后往往带有状语;

- d. Great minds think alike. 英雄所见略同。
- e. The sun sets in the west. 太阳从西边落下。

2. 主语 + 系动词 + 主语补足语 (也称作表语)

Subject + Link Verb + Subject Complement

此句型特点是: 句中动词一般是 be 动词或其他系动词。

► 1. 最常见的是形容词、名词(短语)作表语:

- a. He *looks* unhappy. 他好像不高兴。
- b. The leaf will *turn* yellow in autumn. 树叶秋天会变黄。
- c. I've got to return the book this afternoon; it *falls* overdue a week. 今天下午我得还书, 已经过期有一个星期了。
- d. The best proof of love *is* trust. 爱就意味着信任。
- e. Bread *is* the staff of life. 民以食为天。

► 2. 也可用介词短语作表语:

- a. Beauty *is* in the eye of the beholder. 情人眼里出西施。

► 3. 副词不能用作表语。

- a. He *looks* happily. * 错误

► 4. 在英语中, 除了 be 动词以外, 还有以下系动词:

1) 单纯表示主语的特征、状态的: feel, look, sound, taste, smell, seem, appear 等。

a. The iron *feels* hot. 这铁摸起来很烫。

b. The rose doesn't *smell* much. 这玫瑰花闻起来不是很香。

2) 表示主语由一种状态转变为另一种状态的: become, grow, get, turn, fall, go, come 等。(这些系动词与形容词连用, 一般是具有固定的搭配关系)

a. Our supplies of sugar and rice *fell* short. 我们的糖、米供应不足。

b. The jokes *fell* flat. 玩笑毫无效果。

c. fall asleep 睡着; fall due 到期

d. go hungry 挨饿; go sour 变酸; go wrong 出错

e. Hope your dreams will *come true*. 希望你好梦成真。

f. The leaf will *turn* yellow in autumn. 树叶秋天会变黄。

g. I've got to return the book this afternoon; it *falls* overdue a week. 今天下午我得还书, 已经过期有一星期了。

3) 表示主语保持某种状态的: continue, remain, stay, keep, hold, rest, prove 等。

a. The weather *continued* fine for several days. 那几天, 天气一直晴朗。

b. He *held* silent for the whole day. 他一整天都沉默不语。

c. He has fallen into the habit of doing morning exercises

to *stay* healthy. (不要说: stay healthily. 因为副词不能作表语。) 为了保持身体健康, 他养成了早锻炼的习惯。

d. You may *rest* assured that he will come to the party.

尽管放心, 他会来参加聚会的。

4) * 近似于不及物动词的系动词: sit, act, arrive, blush, marry, die, be born 等。(较难, 只需了解, 不要求掌握!)

a. Mr. Bean often *acted* weird in public. (Mr. Bean was weird when he acted in public.) 在公共场合, 豆子先生总是表现出滑稽古怪的样子。

注: Mr. Bean 英国著名喜剧演员 Rowan Atkinson.

b. All the audience *sat* silent. (不用 silently) 全场观众鸦雀无声。

c. He *was born* poor.

d. The boy *blushed* scarlet. 这孩子羞红了脸。

e. I *married* young. (I was young when I married.) 我早婚。

f. He *died* young. (He was young when he died.) 他英年早逝。

比较: He works hard.

这里 young 是形容词, 作表语(或说是主语补足语), 是说明主语 He 的性质特征的。所以我们可将原句改写成: He was young when he died. young 不是用来修饰谓语动词 die 的。

而 He works hard. 中的 hard 是副词, 作状语, 用来修饰 work, 说明 work 动作行为的特征, 不是说明主语 He 的性质特征的。所以, 我们不能将其改写成: He is hard when he works. (×), 这显然说不通。

再比较:

g. Jane Austin died a **spinster**. (She was a spinster when she died.) Jane Austin 去世时, 依然未嫁。

比较: He died a **hero's death**. (a hero's death 是同源宾语) 他英勇就义。

同样道理, a **spinster** 是作表语, 说明主语的性质。所以我们可以将原句改写成: She was a spinster when she died。而 a **hero's death**, 则是作 die 的宾语, 而不是作表语来修饰主语 He, 因为我们不能说: He was a hero's death when he died.

3. 主语 + 谓语 + 宾语

Subject + Transitive Verb + Object

英语中绝大多数动词都适用于这一句型, 而且能作宾语的成分很多。

a. Beauty will buy **no beef**. 漂亮不能当饭吃。

b. I want **to go home** now. (不定式作宾语)

c. I've finished **reading the book**. (动名词作宾语)

d. I'll pick **you** up this evening. (代词作宾语) 我今晚开车去接你

4. 主语 + 谓语 + 双宾语

Subject + Dative Verb + Indirect Object + Direct Object

有些动词后边需要接两个宾语: 一个指人的宾语, 称之为间接宾语; 另一个指物的宾语, 称之为直接宾语。间接宾语和直接宾语统称为双宾语。

a. He **showed** the guard his passport. 他把护照给门卫看了。
间接宾语 直接宾语

- b. I will *buy* you a meal.

能这样使用的动词可分成三类：（根据间接宾语和介词的关系来分）

1. 同 give 一样，当间接宾语后移时，间接宾语前需带介词 to，表示间接宾语是动作的接受者。这样的动词有：assign, award, bring, deliver, deny, feed, give, grant, hand, lend, offer, owe, pass, pay, promise, post, read, recommend, sell, send, show, take, write, etc.

a. He *showed* his passport to the guard.

b. He *showed* the guard his passport. 他把护照给门卫看了。

2. 同 buy 一样，当间接宾语后移时，间接宾语前需带介词 for，这样的动词有：book（预订），buy, build, change, choose, cook, fetch, find, get, keep, make, order, prepare, sing, etc.

a. I am going to *buy* a gift for her.

b. I am going to *buy* her a gift.

3. 有个别动词只用于这样的结构：“主语 + 动词 + 间接宾语（+ 直接宾语）”，而不用介词来替换。这样的动词有：charge, cost, bet, etc.

a. I'll *bet* you ten dollars. 我跟你赌 10 块钱。

b. The repairman *charged* me ten dollars. 修理工收了我 10 块钱。

此外，较特殊的动词如：ask，当间接宾语后移时，间接宾语前需带介词 of。

c. Can I ask you a question?

d. Can I ask a question of you?

5. 主语 + 谓语 + 复合宾语

Subject + Factitive Verb + Object + Object Complement

► 1. 接复合宾语的动词

有些动词后面接宾语时意思不完整，因而在宾语后还需接补充说明宾语的补足语，宾语和宾语补足语统称为复合宾语。

常见的带复合宾语的动词有：appoint, believe, call, choose, consider, declare, elect, feel, find, keep, leave, let, make, name, nominate, prove, see, suppose, vote, etc.

- a. They *appointed* John chairman. 他们任命约翰为主席。
- b. I *believe* him to be true. 我相信他是诚实的。
- c. The chairman *declared* the meeting over. 主席宣布会议结束。
- d. They *elected* John chairman. 他们推举约翰作主席。
- e. You can *leave* the door open. 你就把门开着。
- f. A hedge (树篱) between *keeps* friendship green. 保持距离、友谊常青。(这句话可引申为“君子之交淡如水”)。

► 2. 区分双宾语和复合宾语

比较：

I made John our chairman. 我选了约翰当我们的主席。

I made John a cake. 我给约翰做了一块蛋糕。

判断两种宾语的方法很简单：在宾语后边加上 be 动词，若能构成完整的句子，则是补足语。比如我们可以说：John is our chairman. 所以上句中的 our chairman 是宾语补足语。无法构成完整的句子，则为直接宾语。比如我们不能说：John is a cake. (约翰是一块蛋糕。)所以，a cake 是直接宾语。

第二节 句子的种类 (了解内容)

英语句子按其用途可分为：陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句四种。

6. 陈述句

(以下经典的口语句型——脱口而出!)

用来陈述事实、表明态度、阐述观点的句子。

请看例句：

- a. Studying English takes time. 学习英文需要时间。
- b. The first step is always the hardest/the most difficult.
万事开头难。
- c. Confidence in yourself is the first step on the road to success. 自信是成功的第一步。(阐述观点)
- d. You can count on me. 你尽管放心/你可以相信我。
- e. You've got a point there. 你说得有道理。
- f. I couldn't agree with you more. 我非常同意你的观点。
- g. I don't agree with you. (表明态度)我不同意你的看法。
- h. I made an enemy. (陈述事实)我得罪了一个人。
- i. I enjoy your company. 我喜欢有你陪伴。

7. 疑问句

► 1. 一般疑问句

一般疑问句具有以下特征：

- 1) 需要用 yes 或 no 来回答;
- 2) 语序一般为: 助动词 + 主语 + 谓语?

请看例句:

a. Is this seat taken? 这位置有人坐吗? (I'll take this seat if you don't mind.)

b. Have you been there?

Yes, I have. / No, I haven't. / No, never.

c. A: Didn't you tell him about it yesterday? 你昨天难道没有把这件事告诉他?

B: Yes, I did. 不, 我告诉他了。/ No, I didn't. 是的, 我没有。(注意翻译)

► 2. 特殊疑问句

其特点是:

- 1) 用来对句子中某一特殊部分提问, 或者说用来对句中某一具体内容提问。总是涉及到 who, what, which, where, when, why, how 其中之一;
- 2) 其语序是: 疑问词 + 一般疑问句, 或作主语的疑问词 + 谓语动词。

请看例句:

a. What time is convenient for you? 你什么时间方便?

b. How late are you open? 你们营业到几点?

c. Where were we? 我们刚才说到哪儿了?

d. What was I just going to say? 我刚才想说什么来着?

e. What's in your mind? 你在想什么?

f. What's going on? 发生什么事了? / 怎么回事?

g. When did you begin to study English? 你什么时候开始学习英语的?

► 3. 选择疑问句

其特点是：

- 1) 提供两种或两种以上情形供对方选择；
- 2) 不用 yes 或 no 来回答。

请看例句：

- a. Do you like tea or (do you like) coffee?
- b. Did you speak to them, or did the manager?
- c. Which ice cream would you like, chocolate, vanilla or strawberry? 你喜欢哪种冰激凌，巧克力的、香草的还是草莓的？

► 4. 反意疑问句

其特点是：

- 1) 附在陈述句之后，对陈述句所说的事实和观点提出疑问；
- 2) 一般来说有两种形式：陈述句肯定，则所附问句否定；陈述句否定，则所附问句肯定。

请看例句：

- a. The Embarrassed Magician 尴尬的魔术师
Magician (to youngster he has called up on the stage):
Now, my boy, you *have never* seen me before, *have you*?
小朋友，你以前从没见过我，对吧？
Boy: No, Daddy. 是的，爸爸。
- b. I am going to look like a lemon, aren't I? 我看上去要像傻瓜了，是吗？
- c. You *have* completed that job, *haven't you*?
- d. You *have not* completed that job, *have you*?

8. 祈使句

其特点是：

- 1) 用以表示请求、命令、劝告、建议等语气的句子；
- 2) 主语 you 常省略，只以动词原形开头；
- 3) 一般没有时态变化，不与情态动词连用。

请看例句：

- a. Stop bugging me! 别烦我！
- b. Don't judge a book by its cover. 不要以貌取人/凡人不可貌相，海水不可斗量。
- c. Don't get me wrong. 不要误会我。
- d. Let's just have a rest. 我们休息一会儿。
- e. Let's hope for the best. 让我们往好处想吧。
- f. Let's talk over dinner. 我们边吃边谈吧。
- g. Let bygones be bygones. 让过去就成为过去吧。
- h. Strike while the iron is hot. 趁热打铁。
- i. Make hay while the sun shines. 晒草要趁太阳好。/ 莫失良机。

9. 感叹句

其特点是：

- 1) 主要由 what 和 how 来引导；
- 2) what 结构主要有三种：
 - A. What a(n) + 形容词 + 可数名词单数 + 主谓部分！
What *a lovely* boy he is!
 - B. What + 形容词 + 不可数名词或可数名词复数 + 主谓部

分!

What foolish mistakes you have made!

What nice weather (it is)!

C. What + a(n) + 可数名词单数!

当我们用“what + a(n) + 名词”这样的结构来表示感叹时，根据名词的不同，这又有两种情况：

一种是不具有感情色彩的普通名词；

a. What a day!

b. What a night!

以上两句中的名词 day, night 不具有感情色彩，此时句子可有两种理解方式，既可以理解为褒义“今天天气多好啊!”和“今晚真美!”，也可以理解为贬义“今天天气真糟糕!”和“今晚真差劲或真倒霉!”

另一种是具有感情色彩的名词。

c. What a moron!

d. What a mess!

以上两句中的名词 moron, mess 已具有感情色彩，即已经把说话人的感情表达出来。我们则按名词的原意翻译：“真是白痴!”和“多乱啊!”

3) how 结构主要有三种：

A. How + 形容词或副词 + 主谓部分!

How lovely the boy is! 这男孩真可爱!

How fast time flies! 时光飞逝!

B. How + 形容词 + a(n) + 可数名词单数 + 主谓部分!

How *lovely* a boy he is! (注意冠词的位置)

C. How + 主谓部分 (实意动词作谓语)!

How he snores! (how 修饰动词)他鼾声如雷。

How I hate exams! 我真烦考试!

温故知新: In Brief

1. 本章重点内容在第一节, 要求熟练掌握五种句型。
2. 了解除了 be 以外的其他四种系动词。
3. 对于接双宾语的动词, 要求知道接介词 to 或 for 的分别是哪些动词。
4. 要求能够区分双宾语和复合宾语。

这一章主要对英文中的简单句作了详细分析, 从下一章开始, 我们将连续分析讨论英文中的三大主从复合句: 名词从句、定语从句和状语从句。掌握这一章内容是为后面讲解从句打下基础。

第一章 英语句子分析练习

1.1 分析下文划线句子的成分

Two men were standing at a bar (酒吧). One man turned to the other and said, "I'll bet you \$100 that I can bite (咬) my left eye." The wager (赌注) was accepted, and the man popped (突然挖出) out his glass eye and bit (bite 过去式) it.

"Now," he said, "I'll give you a chance to win your money back. I'll bet you another \$100 that I can bite my right eye." "He can't have two glass eyes," thought the other man, and he plunked (重重甩下) down his money.

Then the first man took out his false teeth and bit his right eye.

1.2 分析下列句子成分，并判断句子结构类型。

1. Time flies by.
2. I'm on a diet.
3. I owe you one.
4. It slipped my mind.
5. Old habits die hard.
6. I enjoy your company.
7. I can't stand the heat.
8. Chatting on the Internet brings me a lot of fun.
9. He speaks English well.
10. Teachers will make your English better.

11. They found the dead boy.
12. They found the boy dead.
13. I found the book easily.
14. I found the book easy.
15. Tom found Jim an apartment.
16. We found John a loyal (忠心的) friend.
17. I will find you a good teacher.
18. I find you a good teacher.
19. She will make him a good wife.
20. She will make him a good husband.

1.3 分析下列句子中的双宾语，并试着用适当的介词改写句子：

21. Give a thief enough rope and he'll hang himself.
22. Can you recommend me a good novel?
23. He built them a hut.
24. He ordered himself a bottle of champagne.
25. Will you choose me an interesting novel?
26. Can you spare me a few minutes of your valuable time?
27. Jack doesn't owe me anything.
28. May I ask you a favor?
29. That will save you a lot of time.
30. The novel won the author a Nobel Prize.
31. It cost me three dollars.

1.4 分析下列句子中宾语补足语：

32. Absence makes the heart grow fonder.
33. The telescopes of the 1600's magnified objects thirty-three times their original size.
34. The boy's sharp remark left the teacher speechless.

- 35. The chairman has declared the meeting over.
- 36. I prefer my steak medium.
- 37. Dick set the caged animals free.
- 38. The pot calls the kettle black.

1.5 单项选择 (综合练习):

- 39. Willa Cather considered her novel of life in nineteenth-century Nebraska, *My Antonia* _____.
 - A. was her best work
 - B. her best work
 - C. her best work it was
 - D. being her best work
- 40. The photographs of Carrie Mae Weems, in which she often makes her family members _____, are an affectionate and incisive representation of the African American experience.
 - A. are her subjects
 - B. her subjects
 - C. are subjects
 - D. which her subjects
- 41. One of Ulysses S. Grant's first acts as President of the United States was to name the Seneca chief Donehogawa _____ of Indian Affairs.
 - A. as was Commissioner
 - B. Commissioner
 - C. was Commissioner
 - D. him Commissioner
- 42. The novelist Edith Wharton considered the writer Henry James _____.

- A. that a strong influence on her work
B. as strong influence on her work
C. a strong influence on her work
D. was a strong influence on her work
43. In 1993 the Library of Congress appointed author Rita Dove _____ of the United States.
A. as was poet laureate
B. was poet laureate
C. poet laureate
D. and poet laureate
44. In 1952 Ernest Hemingway published *The Old Man and the Sea*, _____.
A. won him the Nobel Prize for Literature in 1954
B. and the Nobel Prize for Literature won in 1954
C. in 1954 won the Nobel Prize for Literature for this work
D. a work that won him the Nobel Prize for Literature in 1954
45. Her work in genetics won United States scientist Barbara McClintock _____ in 1983.
A. was the Nobel Prize
B. the Nobel Prize was
C. the Nobel Prize
D. for the Nobel Prize

第一章 英语句子分析练习答案

1.1 分析下文划线句子的成分

Two men were standing at a bar (酒吧).

主 谓 状

I will bet you \$ 100.

主 谓 间宾 直宾

The wager (赌注) was accepted,

主 谓

I' ll give you a chance

主 谓 间宾 直宾

I' ll bet you another \$ 100

主 谓 间宾 直宾

He can't have two glass eyes

主 谓 宾

The first man took out his false teeth and bit

主 谓 宾 谓

his right eye.

宾

1.2 分析下列句子成分，并判断句子结构类型。

1. Time flies by.

主 谓

2. I' m on a diet.

主 系 表

3. I owe you one.

主 谓 间宾 直宾

4. It slipped my mind.

主 谓 宾

5. Old habits die hard.

主 谓 状

6. I enjoy your company.
主 谓 宾
7. I can't stand the heat.
主 谓 宾
8. Chatting on the Internet brings me a lot of fun.
主 谓 间宾 直宾
9. He speaks English well.
主 谓 宾 状
10. Teachers will make your English better.
主 谓 宾 宾补
11. They found the dead boy.
主 谓 宾
12. They found the boy dead.
主 谓 宾 宾补
13. I found the book easily.
主 谓 宾 状
14. I found the book easy.
主 谓 宾 宾补
15. Tom found Jim an apartment.
主 谓 间宾 直宾
16. We found John a loyal (忠心的) friend.
主 谓 宾 宾补
17. I will find you a good teacher.
主 谓 间宾 直宾
18. I find you a good teacher.
主 谓 宾 宾补
19. She will make him a good wife.
主 谓 间宾 直宾
20. She will make him a good husband.
主 谓 宾 宾补

1.3 分析下列句子中的双宾语，并试着用适当的介词改写句子：

21. Give enough rope to a thief.
22. Can you recommend a good novel to me?

23. He built a hut for them.
24. He ordered a bottle of champagne for himself.
25. Will you choose an interesting novel for me?
26. Can you spare a few minutes of your valuable time for me?
27. Jack doesn't owe anything to me.
28. May I ask a favor of you?
29. That will save a lot of time for you.
30. The novel won a Nobel Prize for the author.
31. It cost me three dollars. (不能改)

1.4 分析下列句子中宾语补足语:

32. Absence makes the heart grow fonder.
33. The telescopes of the 1600's magnified objects thirty-three times their original size.
34. The boy's sharp remark left the teacher speechless.
35. The chairman has declared the meeting over.
36. I prefer my steak medium.
37. Dick set the caged animals free.
38. The pot calls the kettle black.

1.5 单项选择 (综合练习):

39. B 40. B 41. B 42. C 43. C 44. D 45. C

名词从句

10. 四类名词从句

在英文中，名词或名词短语主要充当四种成分：主语、宾语、表语和同位语（见下表第一列）。如果我们把句子当作名词来用，分别在另一个句中作主语、宾语、表语和同位语（见下表第二列），于是构成了四种从句：主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句。因为这四种从句在本质上相当于名词的作用，所以我们把它们统称为名词从句。请看例句：

简单句	主从复合句	解 释
a. <i>The book</i> is interesting.	b. <i>What I am reading</i> is interesting. (主语从句)	a. 句中, book 名词作主语; b. 句中, 完整句子 what I am reading 作主语, 因此称为主语从句。该从句有自己的主语(I)和谓语(am reading), what 在从句中作 am reading 的宾语。

简单句	主从复合句	解 释
a. I believe <i>his words</i> .	b. I believe <i>what he said</i> . (宾语从句)	a. 句中, words 作宾语; b. 句中, 完整句子 <i>what he said</i> 作宾语, 因此被称为宾语从句。该从句有自己的主语(he)和谓语(said), what 在宾语从句中作 said 的宾语。
a. English is <i>a useful tool</i> .	b. The book is <i>what I want</i> . (表语从句)	a. 句中, a useful tool 作表语; b. 句中, 完整句子 <i>what I want</i> 作表语, 因此被称为表语从句。该从句有自己的主语(I)和谓语(want), what 在表语从句中作 want 的宾语。
a. I like <i>the book, Gone with the Wind</i> .	b. The mother must accept <i>the fact that her baby is deaf</i> . (同位语从句)	a. 句中, Gone with the Wind 作 book 的同位语; b. 句中, 完整句子 <i>that her baby is deaf</i> 作 fact 的同位语, 因此被称为同位语从句。该从句有自己的主语(her baby)和谓语部分(is deaf), that 在同位语从句中不充当成分。

11. 三种句子来充当四种成分

上文提到了名词从句其实就是用一个完整的句子充当另一个句子的某一种句子成分(主语、宾语、表语或同位语)便构成了具体某一种名词从句(主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句或同位语从句)。

那么,我们可以用什么样的句子来充当四种成分呢?

充当这四种成分,我们可以用三种句子:陈述句、一般疑问句或特殊疑问句。(名词从句的本质)

陈述句	The Earth is round.	<i>That the Earth is round</i> is a fact. (陈述句作主语, 构成主语从句)
一般疑问句	Does he need my help?	I don't know <i>if he needs my help</i> . (一般疑问句作宾语, 构成宾语从句)
特殊疑问句	Where did he go?	I don't know <i>where he went</i> . (特殊疑问句作宾语, 构成宾语从句)

引导名词从句的常用连词:

连词 that	对应于陈述句	that 在从句中不作成分
连词 whether, if	对应于一般疑问句	whether, if 在从句中不作成分
连接副词 when, where, why, how; 连接代词 who, whom, what, which, whose	对应于特殊疑问句	when, where, why, how 作状语; who, whom, what 作主语、宾语或表语; which, whose 作定语, 后面接名词连用。

12. 陈述句可分别充当四种句子成分 (名词从句的重点内容)

► 1. 要在陈述句句首加上 that

从上述表格我们可以看到, 我们并不是把三种句子直接用来作另一句子的某一成分, 而是要分别对三种句子稍加修改。

对于陈述句, 我们需要在句首加上 *that*, 然后把“*that* + 陈述句”这一结构分别放在另一个句子的四种位置即构成四种名词从句。

1) 主语从句:

把“*that* + 陈述句”这一结构放在主语位置即构成主语从句:

English is difficult.

That English is difficult is not my idea. 有人认为英语很
主语从句 谓语部分

难，我可不这么认为。

a. *That he doesn't understand English* is obvious. 他不懂英语，这很显然。

b. *That the world is round* is a fact. 地球是圆的，这是一基本常识。

c. *That the moon itself does not give off light* is common knowledge. 月球本身不发光这是一个常识。

更常见的是用 it 作形式主语置于句首，而将主语从句放在句末，例如：

d. It is obvious *that he doesn't understand English*.

e. It is a fact *that the world is round*.

f. It is common knowledge *that the moon itself does not give off light*. 月球本身不发光这是一个常识。

g. It is common knowledge *that the whale is not a fish*. 鲸不是鱼类这是常识。

h. It is common knowledge *that a flash of lightning is seen before a clap of thunder is heard*. 我们先看见闪电后听见雷声，这是基本常识。

i. It is a shame *that you did not pass the test*. 你没通过这考试真遗憾。

因此，下列都是常见的主语从句句型：(重点内容！)

① It is + 过去分词 + that 从句：

It's reported that... 据报道……。

It's believed that... 人们相信……。

It is generally thought that... 人们普遍认为……。

It should be noted that... 应当注意……。

It has been found that... 现已发现……。

It must be pointed out that... 必须指出……。

同样可以这么用的动词有: say, expect, know, estimate, forecast, 等。

② It is + 形容词 + that 从句:

It is clear that... 显然……。

It is possible that... 很可能……。

It is likely that... 很可能……。

It is natural that... 很自然……。

It is certain that... 可以相信……。

It is strange that... 奇怪的是……。

It is fortunate that... 幸运的是……。

It is necessary that... 有必要……。

③ It is + 名词短语 + that 从句: a pity, a shame, an honor, a good idea, no wonder, 等等。

It is a pity that... 可惜的是……。

It is a fact that... 事实是……。

It is good news that... ……真是太好了。

It is a good thing that... ……真是件好事。

It is no wonder that... 难怪……。

It is a shame that... 遗憾的是; ……真是太不像话了。

It is an honor that... 真荣幸……。

It is common knowledge that... ……是常识。

It is my belief that... 我相信……

It is a miracle that... ……真是奇迹。

2) 宾语从句:

把“that + 陈述句”这一结构放在宾语位置即构成宾语从句:

a. I think (*that*) *you are right*.

b. We know (*that*) *the world is round*.

c. I think *that a sound knowledge of grammar is indispensable to good writing*. 我认为扎实的语法功底对英文写作极为重要。

只有宾语从句中的 *that* 才可以省去, 主语从句、表语从句和同位语从句中 *that* 一般不要省去。

3) 表语从句:

把“*that* + 陈述句”这一结构放在表语位置即构成表语从句:

My idea is *that the child should be sent to school*. 我认为这孩子应该送到学校去上学。

4) 同位语从句:

把“*that* + 陈述句”这一结构放在同位语位置即构成同位语从句。所谓同位语, 就是用来补充说明名词的成分, 当我们用一个完整的陈述句来补充名词时, 即构成同位语从句。所以同位语从句都是位于一个名词后边, 形式上便构成“名词 + *that* + 陈述句”。

a. He was prepared to prove *his theory that two different weights would fall to the ground at the same time*. 他想证明他的这一理论: 两个不同重量的物体将同时落地。

b. *The fact that he succeeded in the experiment* pleased everybody. 他试验取得成功, 这让大家很高兴。

c. *The rumor that Tom was a thief* turned out to be untrue. 有人曾谣传 Tom 是小偷, 结果证明是不对的。

注意: 同位语从句可能与所修饰的名词被其他成分隔开。请看例句:

d. They spread *the lie* everywhere *that Tom was guilty of theft*. 他们到处散布谣言说 Tom 犯有盗窃罪。

e. *A saying goes that practice makes perfect*. 俗话说熟能生巧。

f. Dreary months dragged by before the tragic *news* reached

1. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 1997; 277: 1039-1043.

2010年12月17日 星期五

1998, 1999, 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009, 2010, 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015, 2016, 2017, 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021, 2022, 2023, 2024, 2025, 2026, 2027, 2028, 2029, 2030, 2031, 2032, 2033, 2034, 2035, 2036, 2037, 2038, 2039, 2040, 2041, 2042, 2043, 2044, 2045, 2046, 2047, 2048, 2049, 2050, 2051, 2052, 2053, 2054, 2055, 2056, 2057, 2058, 2059, 2060, 2061, 2062, 2063, 2064, 2065, 2066, 2067, 2068, 2069, 2070, 2071, 2072, 2073, 2074, 2075, 2076, 2077, 2078, 2079, 2080, 2081, 2082, 2083, 2084, 2085, 2086, 2087, 2088, 2089, 2090, 2091, 2092, 2093, 2094, 2095, 2096, 2097, 2098, 2099, 2100, 2101, 2102, 2103, 2104, 2105, 2106, 2107, 2108, 2109, 2110, 2111, 2112, 2113, 2114, 2115, 2116, 2117, 2118, 2119, 2120, 2121, 2122, 2123, 2124, 2125, 2126, 2127, 2128, 2129, 2130, 2131, 2132, 2133, 2134, 2135, 2136, 2137, 2138, 2139, 2140, 2141, 2142, 2143, 2144, 2145, 2146, 2147, 2148, 2149, 2150, 2151, 2152, 2153, 2154, 2155, 2156, 2157, 2158, 2159, 2160, 2161, 2162, 2163, 2164, 2165, 2166, 2167, 2168, 2169, 2170, 2171, 2172, 2173, 2174, 2175, 2176, 2177, 2178, 2179, 2180, 2181, 2182, 2183, 2184, 2185, 2186, 2187, 2188, 2189, 2190, 2191, 2192, 2193, 2194, 2195, 2196, 2197, 2198, 2199, 2200, 2201, 2202, 2203, 2204, 2205, 2206, 2207, 2208, 2209, 2210, 2211, 2212, 2213, 2214, 2215, 2216, 2217, 2218, 2219, 2220, 2221, 2222, 2223, 2224, 2225, 2226, 2227, 2228, 2229, 2230, 2231, 2232, 2233, 2234, 2235, 2236, 2237, 2238, 2239, 2240, 2241, 2242, 2243, 2244, 2245, 2246, 2247, 2248, 2249, 2250, 2251, 2252, 2253, 2254, 2255, 2256, 2257, 2258, 2259, 2260, 2261, 2262, 2263, 2264, 2265, 2266, 2267, 2268, 2269, 2270, 2271, 2272, 2273, 2274, 2275, 2276, 2277, 2278, 2279, 2280, 2281, 2282, 2283, 2284, 2285, 2286, 2287, 2288, 2289, 2290, 2291, 2292, 2293, 2294, 2295, 2296, 2297, 2298, 2299, 2300, 2301, 2302, 2303, 2304, 2305, 2306, 2307, 2308, 2309, 2310, 2311, 2312, 2313, 2314, 2315, 2316, 2317, 2318, 2319, 2320, 2321, 2322, 2323, 2324, 2325, 2326, 2327, 2328, 2329, 2330, 2331, 2332, 2333, 2334, 2335, 2336, 2337, 2338, 2339, 2340, 2341, 2342, 2343, 2344, 2345, 2346, 2347, 2348, 2349, 2350, 2351, 2352, 2353, 2354, 2355, 2356, 2357, 2358, 2359, 2360, 2361, 2362, 2363, 2364, 2365, 2366, 2367, 2368, 2369, 2370, 2371, 2372, 2373, 2374, 2375, 2376, 2377, 2378, 2379, 2380, 2381, 2382, 2383, 2384, 2385, 2386, 2387, 2388, 2389, 2390, 2391, 2392, 2393, 2394, 2395, 2396, 2397, 2398, 2399, 2400, 2401, 2402, 2403, 2404, 2405, 2406, 2407, 2408, 2409, 2410, 2411, 2412, 2413, 2414, 2415, 2416, 2417, 2418, 2419, 2420, 2421, 2422, 2423, 2424, 2425, 2426, 2427, 2428, 2429, 2430, 2431, 2432, 2433, 2434, 2435, 2436, 2437, 2438, 2439, 2440, 2441, 2442, 2443, 2444, 2445, 2446, 2447, 2448, 2449, 2450, 2451, 2452, 2453, 2454, 2455, 2456, 2457, 2458, 2459, 2460, 2461, 2462, 2463, 2464, 2465, 2466, 2467, 2468, 2469, 2470, 2471, 2472, 2473, 2474, 2475, 2476, 2477, 2478, 2479, 2480, 2481, 2482, 2483, 2484, 2485, 2486, 2487, 2488, 2489, 2490, 2491, 2492, 2493, 2494, 2495, 2496, 2497, 2498, 2499, 2500, 2501, 2502, 2503, 2504, 2505, 2506, 2507, 2508, 2509, 2510, 2511, 2512, 2513, 2514, 2515, 2516, 2517, 2518, 2519, 2520, 2521, 2522, 2523, 2524, 2525, 2526, 2527, 2528, 2529, 2530, 2531, 2532, 2533, 2534, 2535, 2536, 2537, 2538, 2539, 2540, 2541, 2542, 2543, 2544, 2545, 2546, 2547, 2548, 2549, 2550, 2551, 2552, 2553, 2554, 2555, 2556, 2557, 2558, 2559, 2560, 2561, 2562, 2563, 2564, 2565, 2566, 2567, 2568, 2569, 2570, 2571, 2572, 2573, 2574, 2575, 2576, 2577, 2578, 2579, 2580, 2581, 2582, 2583, 2584, 2585, 2586, 2587, 2588, 2589, 2590, 2591, 2592, 2593, 2594, 2595, 2596, 2597, 2598, 2599, 2600, 2601, 2602, 2603, 2604, 2605, 2606, 2607, 2608, 2609, 2610, 2611, 2612, 2613, 2614, 2615, 2616, 2617, 2618, 2619, 2620, 2621, 2622, 2623, 2624, 2625, 2626, 2627, 2628, 2629, 2630, 2631, 2632, 2633, 2634, 2635, 2636, 2637, 2638, 2639, 2640, 2641, 2642, 2643, 2644, 2645, 2646, 2647, 2648, 2649, 2650, 2651, 2652, 2653, 2654, 2655, 2656, 2657, 2658, 2659, 2660, 2661, 2662, 2663, 2664, 2665, 2666, 2667, 2668, 2669, 2670, 2671, 2672, 2673, 2674, 2675, 2676, 2677, 2678, 2679, 26

[illegible][illegible]

1. *Journal of Management Studies*, 1995, 32, 1, 1-14.

[illegible]

[illegible]

English is difficult.

嗯，我懂了，你是要说“英文很难学。”

可是当他继续往下读时，又出现了 is not my idea. 这个谓语部分。

English is difficult is not my idea.

这就让人感到“A Buddha, who is twelve feet, can't touch his own forehead. 丈二和尚摸不着头脑”。你表达的意思到底是说：something is difficult, 还是要说：something is not my idea。

为了避免这个混淆，我们在句首加上一个标志 that, that 一出现就等于是告诉你：that 后面紧接着的句子是要作为另一个句子的某一个成分来使用，不是我要表达的核心意思。因此，读者读到：

That English is difficult...

他也知道你的句子核心意思并没有讲出来，他一定会期待着接着往下的句子的中心意思。

That English is difficult is not my idea.

读到这里，他知道了，你要表达的思想是说：... is not my idea.

再比如：

He said no word at the meeting was strange.

对于这个句子，人们自然会作宾语从句理解：

He said that no word at the meeting was strange. 他说，会上人们的发言都很正常，并没有什么奇怪的。

而你要是写主语从句，则一定要写成：

That he said no word at the meeting was strange. 他在会上

一言不发，这真让人觉得有些蹊跷。

由此可见，that 的重要性。

对于同位语从句和表语从句，若没有 that 作标志同样会存在这种意思混淆不清的问题。例如：

My concern is that the child should be sent to school. 我所关心的是，这孩子应该去上学。

若没有 that，句子写成：

My concern is the child should be sent to school.

读者先读到：

My concern is the child.

他还以为你是在说：我的担心是这个孩子。

而后边又接了 should be sent to school. 让人觉得奇怪。

而对于宾语从句则不然，因为谓语已经出现，谓语后边所接的成分自然是宾语。That 省去不会影响对句子意思的理解。

I think you are right.

或

I think that you are right.

13. 一般疑问句可分别充当四种句子成分

► 1. 一般疑问句要变成陈述句，并且用 whether 或 if 来引导。

1) 主语从句：

Whether he comes or not makes no difference to me. 他来不来对我无所谓。

2) 宾语从句：

I don't know *if/whether he needs my help*.

3) 表语从句:

My concern is *whether he comes or not*. 我关心的是他到底来不来。

4) 同位语从句:

They are faced with the *problem whether they should continue to work*. 他们面临是否继续干下去这个问题。

► 2. If 还是 whether?

1) if 一般只用于引导宾语从句, 而 whether 可引导包括宾语从句在内的其他名词从句。

a. *if he comes or not* makes no difference. * (不用 *if* 引导主语从句)

b. The question is *if he will come*. * (不用 *if* 引导表语从句)

2) if 不和 or not 直接连用, 即一般不说 if or not。但可以说 if...or not。而 whether 没有此限制。

a. I don't know *if or not* he comes. *

b. I don't know *whether or not* he comes.

14. 特殊疑问句可分别充当四种句子成分

► 1. 特殊疑问句变成陈述句语序, 而不用倒装语序。

a. There arose the question *where we could get the loan*. 现在的问题是我们去哪里弄到这笔贷款。

b. I have no idea *when he will return*.

c. *Why he refused to cooperate with us* is still a mystery. 他为什么拒绝与我们合作, 这还是个谜。

上面的句子我们都不能说:

- d. There arose the question where could we get the loan. *
- e. I have no idea when will he return. *
- f. Why did he refuse to cooperate with us is still a mystery. *

► 2. 充当四种成分

1) 主语从句:

- a. September 11, 2001 started out as an ordinary day, but ***what happened that morning*** will be forever etched (铭刻) in our memories. 9·11 事件将会永远印刻在人们记忆中。
- b. ***What we need*** is wholly new kind of police force. 我们需要全新的警察机关。
- c. ***What he told you*** is true. 他告诉你的是真的。
- d. ***Who will chair the meeting*** has not yet been decided. 由谁来主持会议尚未决定。
- e. ***When the meeting is to be held*** has not yet been decided. 会议何时举行还没决定。
- f. ***Why he refused to cooperate with us*** is still a mystery.
- g. ***How a person masters his fate*** is more important than what his fate is. 对于一个人来说,重要的是如何掌握自己的命运而不是被动地接受命运。

2) 宾语从句:

- a. The mother will buy ***whichever books her son wants***.
- b. You should vote for ***which candidate you assume best***.
- c. I have not decided ***whom I should vote for***.
- d. They gave ***who came to the meeting*** a pamphlet.
- e. Could you tell me ***where the post office is***?
- f. We don't know ***why he did not come yesterday***.

3) 表语从句:

- a. Change is *what* keeps us fresh and innovative. Change is *what* keeps us from getting stale. Change is *what* keeps us young. 惟有变革才能使我们保持思维敏锐,富有创造性;惟有变革才能防止我们思想僵化;惟有变革才能使我们永葆青春。
- b. The point is *whose book* is the most interesting.
- c. Money is *what* we are badly in need of. 我们急需的是钱。
- d. Yesterday is history. Tomorrow is a mystery. Today is a gift. That's *why it's called the present!* 昨天是历史。明天是个谜。今天是一件礼物。因此它才被称为 present!
- e. The point is *when* you will become rich.
- f. This is *where* our basic interest lies. 这是我们根本利益所在。
- g. My question is *where* we are going to have our holidays.

4) 同位语从句:

- a. I have no *idea who he is*.
- b. The *question who should go abroad on this business tour* requires consideration.
- c. I have no *idea when he will return*.
- d. There arose the *question where we could get the loan*. 现在的问题是我们去哪里弄到这笔贷款。

最后要说明的是, 同位语从句通常是由 that 引导, 而很少用 whether, if 以及连接代词或连接副词引导, 这是因为我们多是用陈述句来补充名词的内容, 而很少用一般疑问句或特殊疑问句来补充名词的内容。

温故知新: In Brief

这里对名词从句的讲解完全是一种全新的思维，即名词从句可简单概括为这样一句话：名词从句就是用三种句子来分别充当另外一个句子的四种句子成分。

这里的三种句子是：陈述句、一般疑问句以及特殊疑问句。
四种成分是：主语、宾语、表语和同位语。

这三种句子不是直接放在另一个句子中作成分，而是要做以下调整：

- 1) 用陈述句作成分时，需要在句首加 that;
- 2) 用一般疑问句作成分时，需要先将疑问句换成正常语序，然后在句首加上 whether 或 if（只用在宾语从句中），以保留原句的疑问意义；
- 3) 用特殊疑问句作成分时，只需要将疑问句换成正常语序。

在了解以上名词从句的本质之后，重点掌握 that 的用法。

第二章 名词从句练习

2.1 把下列句子改写成 it 作主语的句子:

1. That the word is round is a fact.
2. That smoking can cause cancer is true.
3. That English is becoming an international language is true.
4. That Clint failed his English exam was strange.
5. That they are still alive is a consolation.
6. That he has been late for work over and over again is a serious matter.

2.2 将括号里的疑问句变成名词从句:

7. _____ is unimportant to me. (Does she come?)
8. _____ remains uncertain. (Shall we have the match?)
9. I wonder _____. (Should we wait for him?)
10. No one knows exactly _____. (Is there life on other planets?)
11. I am interested in the question _____. (Will people live on the moon someday?)
12. My question is _____. (Do we have enough time to go to the movie?)
13. Do you know _____? (Does sound travel faster than light?)
14. I don't know _____. (How old is he?)
15. _____ was interesting. (What was he talking about?)
16. Do you know _____? (What's on TV tonight?)

17. Please tell me _____. (Where do you live?)
18. I wonder _____. (Why did dinosaurs become extinct?)
19. _____ wasn't true. (What did she say?)
20. _____ is true. (What did he tell you?)
21. _____ is still a mystery. (Why did they refuse to cooperate with us?)
22. Do you know _____? (When are they coming?)
23. I can't remember _____. (How much does it cost?)
24. Let's ask him _____. (Which book does he want?)
25. I don't know _____. (Who is coming to the party?)
26. I don't know _____. (Who are those people?)
27. Do you know _____? (Whose pen is this?)
28. _____ is a secret. (Why did they leave the country?)
29. _____ is none of your business. (Where did she go?)
30. _____ will be forever etched in our memories. (What happened on the morning of September 11?)
31. I don't remember _____. (How many letters are there in the English alphabet?)
32. I need to find out _____. (How old does a person have to be to get a driver's license?)
33. The little boy wants to know _____. (Do animals have the same emotions as human beings?)
34. The little boy wants to know _____. (Why is the water of the sea salty?)

2.3 单项选择 (综合练习):

35. No one knows exactly _____. (96-1-9)
- A. how did speech begin
- B. how speech began

- C. how the beginning of speech
D. of how beginning speech
36. It is obvious _____ on more important things.
A. which the money should we spend
B. what the money should we spend
C. that the money should we spend
D. that we should spend the money
37. _____ hard water does not mix well with soap.
A. That is a well-known fact
B. That is a well-known fact in which
C. It is a well-known fact that
D. It is a well-known that
38. _____ every magnet is surrounded by a magnetic field.
A. It believes that
B. It believed that
C. It is believed that
D. It's believing that
39. _____ was to return to school.
A. That really interested him
B. What really interested him
C. Which really interested him
D. That interested him really
40. Stopping pouring polluted water into the river is _____ the factory has to solve at present.
A. what
B. that
C. which
D. why
41. A hinge joint is _____ permits the forward and back-

ward movement of a door.

- A. what
- B. which
- C. that
- D. where

42. It's doubtful _____ the government of that country can accept them as permanent residents.

- A. whether
- B. that
- C. how
- D. what

43. It has always puzzled me _____ the old man tied a red silk ribbon on the young tree in his courtyard.

- A. that
- B. why
- C. where
- D. what

44. Scientists have reached the conclusion _____ the temperature on Earth is getting higher and higher.

- A. what
- B. that
- C. which
- D. as

45. An idea came to her _____ she might do the experiment in another way.

- A. that
- B. what
- C. when
- D. which

46. _____ the mass of the nucleus is slightly less than the total mass of the protons and neutrons which made up the nucleus.
- A. It found that
 - B. It was found that
 - C. It was found for
 - D. It finds that
47. He wondered _____.
- A. what will be his wife's reaction
 - B. what would his wife's reaction be
 - C. how would be his wife's reaction
 - D. what his wife's reaction would be
48. He asked me _____ I intended to do after my graduation.
- A. that what
 - B. what
 - C. that
 - D. which
49. Listening carefully to _____ in class means less work later.
- A. what does the teacher say
 - B. what the teacher says
 - C. that the teacher says
 - D. which the teacher says
50. After the accident, I opened my eyes slowly and realized _____ I was still alive.
- A. that
 - B. whether
 - C. what

- D. which
51. John didn't say _____ he would return, but I presume he'll be back for dinner.
- A. that when
- B. when
- C. if or not
- D. where
52. He works too hard. That is _____ is wrong with him.
- A. that which
- B. that what
- C. what
- D. the thing what
53. _____ to space travelers is high acceleration or deceleration forces.
- A. Danger can be
- B. What can be dangerous
- C. They can be dangerous
- D. While danger
54. According to some educators, the goal of teaching is to help students learn what _____ to know to live a well-adjusted and successful life.
- A. do they need
- B. they need
- C. they are needed
- D. as they may need
55. _____ the trainer wanted to tell is _____ Asian elephants are easier to tame than African ones.
- A. That, those
- B. What, that

- C. What, the
D. That, the
56. _____ the London Zoo will adopt as a measurement at the critical moment is to try all ways preserving the animals in the zoo.
- A. That
B. What
C. It's
D. Whether
57. The problem now is _____ we can adopt to overcome the difficulties in shortage of funds.
- A. what measure
B. that measure
C. measure that
D. measure which

第二章 名词从句练习答案

2.1 把下列句子改写成 it 作主语的句子:

1. It is a fact that the word is round.
2. It is true that smoking can cause cancer.
3. It is true that English is becoming an international language.
4. It was strange that Clint failed his English exam.
5. It is a consolation that they are still alive.
6. It is a serious matter that he has been late for work over and over again.

2.2 将括号里的疑问句变成名词从句:

7. Whether she comes is unimportant to me.
8. Whether we shall have the match remains uncertain.
9. I wonder whether we should wait for him.
10. No one knows exactly whether there is life on other planets.
11. I am interested in the question whether people will live on the moon someday.
12. My question is whether we have enough time to go to the movie.
13. Do you know whether sound travels faster than light?
14. I don't know how old he is.
15. What he was talking about was interesting.
16. Do you know what's on TV tonight?
17. Please tell me where you live.

18. I wonder why dinosaurs became extinct.
19. What she said wasn't true.
20. What he told you is true.
21. Why they refused to cooperate with us is still a mystery.
22. Do you know when they are coming?
23. I can't remember how much it costs.
24. Let's ask him which book he wants.
25. I don't know who is coming to the party.
26. I don't know who are those people.
27. Do you know whose pen this is?
28. Why they left the country is a secret.
29. Where she went is none of your business.
30. What happened on the morning of September will be forever etched in our memories?
31. I don't remember how many letters there are in the English alphabet.
32. I need to find out how old a person has to be to get a driver's license.
33. The little boy wants to know whether animals have the same emotions as human beings.
34. The little boy wants to know why the water of the sea is salty.

2.3 单项选择(综合练习):

35. B 36. D 37. C 38. C 39. B 40. A 41. A 42. A
43. B 44. B 45. A 46. B 47. D 48. B 49. B 50. A
51. B 52. C 53. B 54. B 55. B 56. B 57. A

定语从句

第一节 定语从句概述

15. 定语从句概说

► 1. 形容词作定语和从句作定语

在英文中，很多时候我们可以用一个形容词作定语来修饰一个名词(见下表例句)，但是若要表达更为复杂的意思，简单地用形容词作定语就无能为力了，我们就要借助于一个句子来修饰名词，用作名词的定语，对名词进行限制。

两种定语	例句	比较
形容词作定语	a. I don't like <u>lazy people</u> .	形容词作定语置于 <u>名词前面</u> 。

两种定语	例 句	比 较
完整句子作定语	<p>a. I don't like the <u>people</u> <i>who are lazy</i>.</p> <p>b. I don't like the <u>people</u> <i>who are never on time</i>. 我不喜欢从不守时的人。</p> <p>c. I don't like the <u>people</u> <i>who never keep their words</i>. 我不喜欢从不守信用的人。</p>	<p>从句修饰名词要置于名词后边。</p> <p>从句往往表示更为复杂的意思。比如 b, c 两个句子就不使用形容词来作定语, 而采用了句子作定语。</p>

► 2. 定语从句的两个重要概念：先行词和关系词

- 1) **先行词**：被定语从句所修饰或限制的对象称为先行词。上句中 the people 即为先行词。
- 2) **关系词**：重复指代先行词、起连接主句和从句的作用并且在定语从句中充当一定成分的连词。上句中的 who 即为关系词。因此关系词有两个作用：a) **代词作用**：重复指代先行词并且在定语从句中充当一定成分，上述例句中 who 作主语；b. **连接作用**：起连接主句和从句的作用。
- 3) **主句和从句**：上句中 I don't like the people. 是独立主句；who are lazy/never on time. 则是定语从句。

第二节 关系代词的用法

引导定语从句的关系代词有：

先行词指人：who, whom；

先行词指物：which；

先行词指人或物均可：that, whose。

下面一一详细介绍这些词的用法。

16. 先行词指人，用关系代词 *who, whom*► 1. 先行词指人才能用 *who/whom*

先看两个简单句：

The woman is a famous dancer and she lives next door. 这位女士是一名著名的舞蹈演员，她就住在我家隔壁。

上述两个简单句有一个“重复元素”：这里的 *she* 就指代 *the woman*，两句之间有个交叉点，而通过这个交叉点建立起两句之间的关系，所以定语从句也称为关系从句 (relative clause)。我们现在要用 *she lives next door* 来作定语修饰 *the woman*，以告诉对方哪个 *woman* 是舞蹈演员。而在定语从句中，代指人的关系词用 *who*。前面说过关系词既有代词作用又还起着连词的作用，因此，上句可改写成：

The woman is a famous dancer who lives next door.
= and she

定语从句一般紧跟在它所修饰的名词后边。因此，上句又可进一步写成：

The woman *who lives next door* is a famous dancer.

到此，一个标准的定语从句制造完毕！关系词 *who* 既指代 *the woman*，同时又在从句中作成分——从句的主语。

更多例句：

- a. Friendship is a very difficult thing. It is hard to handle. It creates many different problems. In fact I would say that friendship is as hard to handle as love is, or even marriage. Of course I am not talking about easy-come-easy-go friendship. I'm talking about *friends who* care deeply about each other, *who* support each other, *who* make life

- worth living. I'm talking about friends **who** you can share almost everything with.
- b. Anger is a **thief who** steals away the nice moments.
- c. **He who** is not handsome at twenty, nor strong at thirty, nor rich at forty, nor wise at fifty, will never be handsome, strong, rich, or wise. (一个人若 20 岁不俊美、30 岁不健康、40 岁不富有、50 岁不明智, 那么他将永远不会拥有这些。)
- d. There is this difference between happiness and wisdom: the **person who** thinks himself the happiest man really is so; but the **person who** thinks himself the wisest is generally the greatest fool. 幸福与智慧区别于此: 认为自己是最为幸福的, 他真的就最幸福; 而认为自己最智慧的, 却往往是最大的傻瓜。
- e. The world is a book, and **those who** do not travel read only one page. 世界犹如一本书, 而那些从不出门旅行的人仅仅读了这本书的 - 页。

► 2. who 和 whom 的区别

1) who 在定语从句中可作主语、宾语或表语, 但 who 之前不可用介词(如不能说 with who, 而是 with whom)。

- a. I like the people **who** I work with. 我很喜欢同我一起工作的那些人。(who 作介词 with 的宾语。)
- b. I like the people **with whom** I work.
- c. I'm talking about friends **who** you can share almost everything **with**. 我说的是那些可以分享一切的朋友。
- d. I'm talking about friends **with whom** you can share almost everything.

e. I think you should stay faithful to the person **who** you're married **to**. 我认为你应该对你的配偶忠诚。

f. I think you should stay faithful to the person **to whom** you're married.

2) **whom** 在定语从句中不能作主语，但可作宾语或表语。

a. A rich person is not **one who** has the most, but is **one who** needs the least. (不用: ...**one whom has**...) 一个富有的人，不是因为他拥有最多，而是因为他需要最少。

b. Only **the people** _ _ have the patience to do simple things perfectly will acquire the skill to do difficult things easily. (只有有耐心圆满完成简单工作的人，才能够轻而易举地完成困难的事。)

A. **whom** B. **who**

正确答案: B。

17. 表示人或物的所有关系，用 **whose**

我们用 **whose** 表示所有关系。它的作用就如同物主代词 **my**, **your**, **her**, **his**, **their**, **our** 一样，**whose** 后边要接名词。**whose** 可指人也可指物。“**whose** + 名词”在从句中可作主语、动词宾语或介词宾语。

请看例句：

简单句	定语从句	whose 可指人或物
I know a friend. His brother is a pop singer.	I know a friend whose brother is a pop singer.	whose 代替了 his , 指人 friend。

简单句	定语从句	whose 可指人或物
These children sit in a schoolroom. <i>Its windows</i> are all broken.	These children sit in a schoolroom <i>whose windows</i> are all broken.	whose 代替了 its, 指物 schoolroom。

- a. When I looked through the window, I saw a girl *whose beauty* took my breath away. (作主语, whose 指人 a girl)
- b. It was a meeting *whose importance* I did not realize at the time. (作动词宾语, whose 指事物 a meeting)
- c. Atlas (in Greek mythology) was a kneeling man *on whose shoulders* the world rested. (作介词宾语, whose 指人 a kneeling man)

18. 先行词指物, 用关系代词 which

We are studying sentences. They contain adjective clauses.

同样道理, 我们用 which 代替 they, 来指代 sentences, 告诉对方我们正在学习什么类型的句子。

We are studying sentences *which* contain adjective clauses.
我们正在学习带有形容词从句的句子。

which 可以指代单个名词:

- a. Anger is a wind *which* blows out the lamp of the mind.
愤怒是吹灭心灵之灯的风。
- b. Perhaps it is human to appreciate little that *which* we have and to long for that *which* we have not. 或许, “不惜已获, 贪求不得”是人类的共同弱点吧。(先行词是 that, which 指单个词。)

which 可以指代一个短语：

- c. He likes climbing mountains, *which* is a good exercise.
(先行词是主句的一部分 climbing mountains)

which 可以指代前面整个句子：

- d. Tom was late.

That surprised me.

Tom was late, *which* surprised me.

- e. He tore up my photo, *which* upset me. (主句 He tore up my photo 作 which 的先行词。)
f. She wore her swimming things in the office, *which* shocked her boss a great deal.
g. He ran all the way from the station, *which* I thought was incredible(难以置信).

19. that 可以指代人，也可以指代物

that 既可指人，也可指物；that 不用在非限制性定语从句中；(关于限制性和非限制性定语从句，第四节详细讨论)that 不能用于介词后边，这同 who 一样。

The world _____ we live is made up of matter. (我们所生活的世界由物质组成。)

A. in which

B. in that

C. which

正确答案：A。

上句我们也可以说成：

The world that/which we *live in* is made up of matter.

在下列情况中最好用 that: (重点记忆)

- 1. 当先行词既是有人又有物时, 用 that。

The writer and his novels that the article deals with are quite familiar to us.

- 2. 先行词为指物的 all, little, few, much, none, the first, 用 that。

- a. *All that* glitters is not gold.
b. This book contains *little that* is useful.
c. There is not *much that* can be done.
d. As long as you stand up to the difficulties, there are *none that* cannot be overcome. 只要你勇敢地去面对困难, 就没有什么克服不了的!

- 3. 先行词是不定代词 something, anything, nothing, everything 时, 一般用 that。

- a. Is there *anything that* I can do for you?
b. Greater expense does not always equal better gift. I would much rather receive a gift that was unique or that I knew my friend had put some thought into rather than *something that* cost a lot of money but *that* I didn't need or want. I would much rather receive *something that* made me laugh, made me reminisce, or fit my personality than *something that* cost a lot but *that* I will just throw in my closet and forget about. (礼物并不是价格越贵就越好, 我倒希望收到的礼物是很别致的, 或是我知道朋友为我精

心准备的，而不是花费很多却不是我所想要或需要的。我希望的是能够让我开心、让我回味过去的时光、或是适合我口味的礼物，而不是价格不菲、看完之后随手就扔到储藏室、抛在脑后的礼物。)

- 4. 先行词被 *any, only, all, every, no, some, much, few, little*, 序数词, 最高级, *the only, the one, the very, the right, the last* 修饰时, 用 *that*。

- a. Tell us *all* things *that* you know.
- b. There is *no* difficulty (*that*) they can't overcome.
- c. *The only* thing *that* we should do is find our way home.
- d. *The very* problem *that* I want to solve is like this.
- e. He is *the only* man _____ can speak four foreign languages in our company.

A) *that* B) *which* C) *who* D) *whom*

正确答案: A

20. 在从句中作宾语的关系代词可以省去

上述关系代词 *who, whom, which, that* 若在定语从句中用作宾语, 我们往往可以省去关系代词。例如:

- a. Tina likes the present *which I gave* her for her birthday.
- b. Tina likes the present *that I gave* her for her birthday.
- c. Tina likes the present *I gave* her for her birthday.
- d. I like the people *who I work with*.
- e. I like the people *I work with*.
- f. I'm talking about friends *who you can* share almost everything with.

- g. I'm talking about friends *you can* share almost everything with.

第三节 关系副词的用法

在英语中，引导定语从句的关系副词主要有 *when*, *where*, *why*，它们在从句中分别作时间状语、地点状语和原因状语。

21. *when* 的用法

► 1. 先行词指时间

when 引导限制性和非限制性定语从句，其先行词须是表示时间的名词，如 *day*, *year*, *time* 等。*when* 可用 *on which* 来替换。

- a. I'll never forget the *day when* I met you.
- b. I'll never forget the *day on which* I met you.
- c. April Fool's Day is *that special day* of the year *when* you should play a joke on someone! Children's favorites are to put salt in the sugar bowl for Dad's morning coffee or put chalk on a desk chair at school so the teacher gets a white backside! But remember, if you play a joke after 12 noon, YOU are the April Fool!
- d. We will put off the outing until *next week*, *when* we won't be so busy.
- e. March 10, 1876 was the *day when* (= *on which*) the first complete sentence was sent over a telephone.
- f. The *day* may soon come *when* we don't bother to go to office but just work at home.

► 2. 关系副词 when 在从句中作时间状语

当心：表示时间的先行名词，若定语从句不是缺状语，而是缺少主语或宾语，要用 **which** 或 **that** 来引导定语从句。因为用 **when** 来引导定语从句的前提条件是：**when** 在其引导的定语从句中作时间状语。

- a. The day, **which** began brightly, ended with a violent storm. (**which** 作主语) 那天开始的时候还是晴空万里，后来却下起了暴风雨。
- b. I'll never forget the time **which** I spent on campus.
which 作 spent 的宾语
- c. I'll never forget the day **when** we first met in the park.
when 作时间状语，修饰 met。

22. where 的用法

► 1. where 的先行词指地点

where 引导定语从句，其先行词必须是表示地点的名词，如 **place**, **house** 等。

- a. — Since you work in the theater, can't you get me a free ticket now and then?
— Certainly if you bring me a few notes now and then from the **bank where** you work!
——既然你在剧院工作，你能否时常给我拿一些免费的票？
——没问题，只要你能在你工作的那家银行时常给我拿出一些“票子”。
- b. Do you know any **place where** I can buy Clint's grammar book?

- c. Do you know any *place at which* I can buy Clint's grammar book?
- d. This is the *town where* (= in which) I spent my childhood.
- e. This is the *restaurant where* I often have my breakfast.

► 2. 关系副词 where 在从句中作地点状语

当心：与 when 类似，并非凡是先行词表示地点的名词，都得由 where 来引导定语从句，这得看关系词在从句中充当的成分。where 在定语从句中作地点状语，若定语从句缺主语或宾语，要用 which 或 that 引导定语从句。

- a. This is the *town where* I spent my childhood.
- b. This is the *town which* I told you about before.
which 作 **about** 的宾语
- c. The library *where* students often study was on fire last night.
- d. The library, *which* was built in the 1930's, needs to be renovated.
- e. One of the places *which* I want to visit someday is Tibet.
 (which 作 visit 宾语)

23. why 的用法

用来表原因，只引导限制性定语从句，先行词是 reason 等表示原因的名词。

This is the reason *why* I didn't come here. (此处 why = for which)

第四节 限制性和非限制性定语从句

英语中的定语从句有限制性和非限制性之分。二者在形式上的区别是：限制性定语从句的关系词和先行词之间不用逗号分开，而非限制性定语从句则有逗号分开。这种在形式上的有逗号或没有逗号并不是随意的，换句话说，二者更重要的是在意义上有区别。根据意义上的差别，我们可以把定语从句分三种情况分析。

24. 不用逗号隔开——限制性定语从句

作用：用来提供必要的信息，以说明定语从句所修饰的先行词的身份或性质，或用来限制先行词所指的范围。若去掉限制性定语从句，则主句部分含义不明确，或意义不完整。

比如：I don't like people. 这句话意思不明确，因此其后边必须加一个限制性定语从句，才能使得句义完整。比如：

- a. I don't like people **who are never on time.**
- b. I don't like people **who never keep their words.**
- c. I don't like people **who are lazy.**
- d. I don't like people **who are selfish.**

以上句子黑体部分的定语从句都是用来说明 people 的性质，是必不可少的信息内容。因此不能用逗号把它变为非限制性定语从句。再分析下列例句：

- a. There are two factors **which determine an individual's intelligence.** 决定人的智力的因素有两方面。
- b. He is a man **who is of value to the people.** 他是一个有利于人民的人。

- c. People *who live in glasshouses* shouldn't throw stones.
不要五十步笑百步。

25. 用逗号隔开——非限制性定语从句

作用：用来提供附加的而非必要的信息，只是对先行词作进一步的解释、补充或说明。若去掉此定语从句，整个主句意义一样很明确，不会引起误解和歧义。

- a. Beijing, *which is the capital of China*, has developed into an international city.
- b. My mother, *who is 50 this year*, lives with me now.
- c. Einstein, *who was a great Jewish scientist*, created the theory of relativity.
- d. Hawaii, *which consists of eight principal islands*, is a favorite vacation spot.

以上句中的定语从句都是对它前面的先行名词进行补充说明，向读者提供附加的信息。均不能变为限制性定语从句。如若说：My mother *who is 50 this year* lives with me now. 则让人理解为“我有好几个母亲，目前和我住在一起的是今年 50 岁的那位母亲。”

总的原则：如果定语从句修饰一个专有名词，我们一般要用逗号，也就是说要用非限制性定语从句。这是因为专有名词本身意思已经很完整，不需要限制，用定语从句只是对它进行补充。

26. 用或不用逗号隔开句义有差别

在英文中，还有一类句子用限制性或非限制性定语从句都可以，但强调的意义不一样，句义有改变。试比较：

限制性	非限制性	解 释
a. He has a daughter who works in a hospital.	b. He has a daughter, who works in a hospital.	a. 句表示他有多女儿, 其中有一个在医院工作的女儿。 b. 句强调他有一个女儿, 不是儿子, “在医院工作”纯粹是为了补充信息。
a. The food which wasn't in the fridge all went off.	b. The food, which wasn't in the fridge, all went off.	a. 没有放在冰箱里的那部分食物坏了。 b. 食物都坏了, 因为没有放在冰箱里。此时定语从句补充说明了食物变质的原因, 是因为没有放在冰箱里。

a. The cab drivers who knew about the traffic jam took another road. 知道那里塞车的出租车司机就换了另一条道。(言外之意: 不知道的司机则没有换路线, 只有部分司机换路线了。)

b. The cab drivers, who knew about the traffic jam, took another road. 出租车司机因为知道那里塞车了, 他们都换了另一条道。(全部司机都知道, 都换了行驶路线。)

最后, 请注意上述两种定语从句在翻译上的差别。

限制性定语从句一般翻译成定语的形式“……的”, 而非限制性定语从句往往译成各种状语。例如:

a. The food, which wasn't in the fridge, all went off. 食物都坏了, 因为没有放在冰箱里。(译成原因状语从句)

b. The Ambassador gave a dinner to the scientists, with whom he especially wished to talk. 大使宴请了那些科学家, 因为他特别想与他们交谈一下。(译成原因状语从句)

- c. The people were desperate for work, any work, which could support their family. 人们急于找到工作, 什么工作都行, 只要能养家糊口。(译成条件状语从句)
- d. The millionaire had another house built, which he didn't need at all. 那位百万富翁又建了一幢房子, 尽管他并不需要。(译成让步状语从句)

第五节

that 引导定语从句和同位语从句的区别

27. that 引导定语从句和同位语从句的区别

► 1. that 是否作成分

that 在定语从句中充当成分; 在同位语从句中不作任何成分, 仅起连词作用。

a. **The rumor that** he spread everywhere turned out to be untrue.

b. **The rumor that** Tom was a thief turned out to be untrue.

以上两句先行词都是 the rumor, 连接词都是 that。

但 a. 句中的 that 在从句 he spread everywhere 中作成分, 充当 spread 的宾语。故为定语从句。

b. 句中的 that 在从句 Tom was a thief 中不作任何成分, 从句 Tom was a thief 是一完整的句子, 不缺任何成分。故其为同位语从句, 作 the rumor 的同位语, 补充说明 the rumor 的具体内容。

c. The fact that we talked about is very important. (that 作

about 宾语，定语从句)

- d. The fact that he succeeded in the experiment pleased everybody. (that 不充当成分，同位语从句)

► 2. 从句的作用

定语从句相当于形容词，它对先行词起修饰、描述、限制的作用；同位语从句相当于一个名词，它是前面名词的内容的具体表述，二者是同位关系。

- a. The news that you heard is not true. (定语从句)
 b. The news that Lincoln was murdered at a theatre is true. (同位语从句)
 c. The fact which you pointed out made me interested.
 d. The fact that there are no lives on the moon is known to us all.

温故知新：In Brief

定语从句是英文造句规则中的一个难点，也是重点。它有两个重要概念：先行词和关系词。定语从句的核心内容都是围绕着这两者之间的关系展开的，重点是讨论先行词和关系词之间的搭配关系，比如先行词指人，关系词要用 who 或 that；先行词指物、关系词要用 which 或 that；指时间一般用关系词 when（只作状语）等等。

其次，在写文章时，一定要真正会判断何时用限制性定语从句，何时该用非限制性定语从句。这两种形式上不同的定语从句其实是它们思维上差异的反映。

最后，还有一个重点：学会区别 that 引导的定语从句和同位语从句。

第三章 定语从句练习

3.1 将下列每一组中的两个简单句合并为一个定语从句，用第二个句子作定语。

1. The girl is happy. She won the race.
2. The student is from America. He sits next to me.
3. The boy was not badly hurt. The boy fell from a tree.
4. The taxi driver was friendly. He took me to the airport.
5. I can't remember the name of the person. I gave the money to him.
6. The employees had to retire. They had reached the age of sixty-five.
7. The teacher spoke to the boys. Their work was below standard.
8. The people were friendly. I rented their houses.
9. He is the professor. I am taking his grammar course.
10. That is the man. His son died in that air crash.
11. The man called the police. His car was stolen.
12. The man is famous. His picture is in the newspaper.
13. I have a neighbor. His dog barks all day long.
14. The girl is a good friend of mine. I borrowed her camera.
15. The church was built in 1400. We were married in the church.
16. She told me her address. I wrote it down on a piece of paper.
17. We are studying sentences. They contain adjective clauses.
18. The exhibition was not very interesting. My friend took

me to see it.

19. John isn't home yet. That worried me.

20. Jack was fired from his job. That surprised all of his co-workers.

21. My roommate always plays music at the dorm. That really gets on my nerves.

3.2 将下列定语从句中的 that 改为 who 或 which, 或省去:

22. The girl that answered the phone was polite.

23. I didn't know any of the people that Bill invited to his party.

24. The woman that I saw in the park was feeding the pigeons.

25. I like the barber that usually cuts my hair.

26. The person that I admire most is my father.

27. The people that I met at the party last night were very nice.

28. The people that live next to me have three cars.

29. The soup that I had for lunch was too salty.

30. The pill that I took made me sleepy.

31. My daughter asked me a question that I couldn't answer.

32. The man that my sister goes out with is tall, dark and handsome.

33. I couldn't understand the woman that I talked to on the phone.

3.3 将下列每一组中的两个简单句合并为一个定语从句, 用第二个句子作定语。

34. Monday is the day. We will come on that day.

35. He arrived in Shanghai that day. On the same day I left.
36. July is the month. The weather is usually the hottest in that month.
37. April Fool's Day is that special day of the year. On the day you should play a joke on someone!
38. March 10, 1876 was the day. On the day the first complete sentence was sent over a telephone.
39. The city was beautiful. We spent our vacation there.
40. That is the restaurant. I will meet you there.
41. The town is small. I grew up there.
42. This is the house. They put their tools in it.

3.4 讨论下列空格填入 where, when 还是 which。

43. I'll never forget the day _____ I met you for the first time.
44. I'll never forget the days _____ I spent with you.
45. The day, _____ began brightly, ended with a violent storm.
46. The day _____ we don't bother to go to office but just work at home may soon come.
47. I arrived in Beijing on the day _____ it was snowing heavily.
48. This is the town _____ I was born.
49. This is the town _____ I want to visit most someday.
50. The ripe fruit should be stored in a place _____ contains much carbon dioxide so that it can't decay rapidly.
51. The ripe fruit should be stored in a place _____ there is much carbon dioxide so that it can't decay rapidly.
52. The library, _____ was built in the 1930's, needs to be

renovated.

53. I guess you can find him in the library ____ he works.

3.5 判断下列定语从句的正误。

54. He is the man who he taught me English.

55. I gave the book to him that he needed it.

56. The airline has a booklet who will tell you most of the important things about a trip to Europe.

57. The man which told me the news refused to give me his name.

58. The book which I bought it at the bookstore was very useful.

59. The woman was nice that I met yesterday.

60. The people which live next to me are friendly.

61. I met a woman who her husband is a famous lawyer.

62. Let ABC be a triangle which sides are of unequal length.

63. Do you know the people who lives in that house?

64. The people who I met them at the party last night were interesting.

65. I enjoyed the music which we listened to it.

66. He dropped in on an old friend that day where he visited his club.

67. The day, when began brightly, ended with a violent storm.

3.6 分析下面句中所含定语从句分别属于前文所述 3 种情形中的哪一种，必要时添加逗号。

68. I don't like stories that have unhappy endings.

69. A dictionary is a book that gives you the meaning of

words.

70. It seems that the earth is the only planet that can support life.
71. The teacher who comes from Canada teaches us English.
72. We are studying sentences which contain adjective clauses.
73. I saw him stand under the apple tree which was behind the house.
74. The teacher thanked the students who had given her some flowers.
75. He has a daughter who works in a hospital.
76. An elephant which is the earth's largest land mammal has few natural enemies other than human beings.
77. One of the elephants which we saw at the zoo had only one tusk.
78. The rice which we had for dinner last night was very good.
79. Rice which is grown in many countries is a staple food throughout much of the world.
80. Jane was delighted when she opened the present which was from her ex-boyfriend.
81. A child whose parents are dead is called orphan.

3.7 用定语从句翻译下列句子。

82. 我昨天买了一本书，该书的作者是一位盲人。
83. 我的办公室在这栋大楼的二楼，它很小。
84. 你昨天借给我的那本书很有趣。
85. 那位老师教我英文，他是加拿大的。
86. 和我一起工作的那个女孩已经有男朋友了。
87. 告诉我今天早晨你迟到的原因。

88. 他们到的时候天正在下雨。
89. 他是一个值得信赖的人。
90. 你住的那家酒店叫什么名字?
91. 接电话的那个男的告诉我你不在。

3.8 单项选择 (综合练习):

92. The professor and her achievement _____ you told me about are admired by us all.
A. who
B. which
C. that
D. whom
93. I don't suppose anything happens _____ he doesn't foresee.
A. that
B. which
C. what
D. as
94. They shouted with the loudest voice _____ they could.
A. when
B. that
C. which
D. what
95. This is the best book _____ on the subject.
A. which there is
B. that there is
C. which is
D. what is
96. He's written a book _____ name I've completely for-

gotten.

A. whose

B. which

C. of which

D. that

97. The meeting was postponed, _____ was exactly what I wanted.

A. that

B. which it

C. and that

D. this

98. Mr. Jones, _____ John was working, was very generous about overtime payment.

A. for whom

B. for who

C. whom

D. for that

99. There is not much _____ can be done now.

A. that

B. which

C. who

D. what

100. He showed me a book, _____ I could tell that it was pretty old.

A. which cover

B. of which cover

C. the cover which

D. from the cover of which

101. This kind of solar cooker can be used only in the day-

- time _____ the sun is shining.
- A. when
 - B. as
 - C. while
 - D. since
102. Solomon was diligent, responsible and hardworking, _____ he was promoted from a clerk to a manager.
- A. for which
 - B. which
 - C. for
 - D. that
103. What is _____ ordered the English book?
- A. the lady's address in Beijing who
 - B. the lady's address in Beijing which
 - C. the address of the lady in Beijing who
 - D. the address of the lady in Beijing which
104. There comes a time in every man's life _____.
- A. then he has to think
 - B. which he needs
 - C. when he has to think
 - D. therefore he has to work hard
105. No sample _____ we have received is satisfactory.
- A. which
 - B. what
 - C. that
 - D. who
106. Obviously there was little certainty _____ the chairman would agree to this proposal.
- A. which

- B. why
C. what
D. that
107. There can't be any life on Venus, _____ the temperature is as high as 900°F.
A. which
B. when
C. where
D. there
108. The reason _____ he died was lack of medical care.
A. which
B. for that
C. as
D. why
109. This is the shop _____ I often buy foodstuff.
A. where
B. which
C. of which
D. to which
110. The reason _____ he gave for his being late was unacceptable.
A. why
B. that
C. who
D. for which
111. The shop _____ I told you about before has closed down.
A. where
B. in which

- C. at which
D. which
112. Those guilty of a serious crime _____ refuse to reform must be severely punished.
A. which
B. whom
C. when
D. who
113. Yet no firm evidence had come to light _____ the men arrested were actually responsible.
A. which
B. as
C. what
D. that
114. Another food crop raised by Indians _____ strange to the European was called Indian corn.
A. who were
B. that were
C. that was
D. who was
115. They helped us time and again, _____ very kind of them.
A. who were
B. which was
C. that was
D. which were
116. "Do you like the book your father gave you?"
"Very much. It's exactly _____ I wanted."
A. one which

- B. that
C. one what
D. the one
117. When reports came into London Zoo ____ a wild puma had been spotted forty-five miles south of London, they were not taken seriously.
A. what
B. as
C. which
D. that
118. Many birds have feathers ____ with their surroundings.
A. colors blend
B. that colors blend
C. whose colors blend
D. of which the colors that blend
119. Civil rights are the freedoms and rights _____ as a member of a community, state, or nation.
A. may have a person
B. a person who may have
C. a person may have
D. and a person may have
120. In the early twentieth century, the "Model T" automobile was mass-produced and sold at a price _____ could afford.
A. the average person who
B. that the average person who
C. and the average person
D. the average person

3.9 用适当的连词填空(名词从句与定语从句辨析)

Chicken Soup for the Soul 心灵鸡汤

Rose

Real love lies not in 121 (what/which/that) is done and known, but in 122 (what/which/that) is done but not known.

Red roses were her favorites; her name was also Rose. And every year her husband sent them, tied with pretty bows. The year he died, the roses were delivered to her door. The card said, "Be my Valentine," like all the years before.

Each year he sent her roses, and the note would always say, "I love you even more this year than last year on this day." "My love for you will always grow with every passing year." She knew 123 (what/which/that) this was the last time that the roses would appear.

She thought 124 (what/which/*) he ordered roses in advance before this day. Her loving husband did not know 125 (what/which/that) he would pass away. He always liked to do things early before the time. Then, if he got too busy, everything would work out fine.

She trimmed the stems and placed them in a very special vase and then put the vase beside the portrait of his smiling face. She would sit for hours in her husband's favorite chair, while staring at his picture, and the roses sitting there.

A year went by, and it was hard to live without her mate. With loneliness and solitude 126 (what/which/that) had become her fate. Then the very hour as on Valentines before, the doorbell rang, and there were roses, sitting by her door.

She brought the roses in, and then just looked at them in shock. Then went to get the telephone to call the florist shop. The owner answered and she asked him if he would explain 127 (what/which/that/why) someone would do this to her, causing her such pain.

"I know 128 (what/which/*) your husband passed away more than a year ago," The owner said, "I knew you'd call, and you would want to know." "The flowers 129 (what/which/that) you received today were paid for in advance." "Your husband always planned ahead, he left nothing to chance."

"There is a standing order 130 (what/which/that) I have on file down here. And he has paid well in advance, you'll get them every year. There also is another thing 131 (what/which/that) I think you should know, he wrote a special little card... he did this years ago."

"Then should ever I find out 132 (what/which/that) he's no longer here, it's the card 133 (what/which/that) should be sent to you the following year." She thanked him and hung up the phone, her tears now flowing hard. Her fingers were shaking, as she slowly reached to get the card.

Inside the card, she saw 134 (what/which/that) he had written her a note. Then as she stared in total silence, this is 135 (what/which/that) he wrote...

"Hello my love, I know it's been a year since I've been gone, I hope it hasn't been too hard for you to overcome."

"I know it must be lonely, and the pain is very real.

For if it was the other way, I know 136 (what/which/that/how) I would feel.

The love 137 (what/which/that) we shared made everything so beautiful in life.

I loved you more than words can say, you were the perfect wife."

"You were my friend and lover, you fulfilled my every need.

I know it's only been a year, but please try not to grieve.

I want you to be happy, even when you shed your tears.

That is 138 (what/which/how/why) the roses will be sent to you for years."

"When you get these roses, think of all the happiness,

139 (what/which/that) we had together, and how both of us were blessed.

I have always loved you and I know I always will.

But, my love, you must go on, you have some living still.”

“Please... try to find happiness, while living out your days.

I know it is not easy, but I hope _ 140 _ (what/which/that) you find some ways.

The roses will come every year, and they will only stop,
When your door's not answered, when the florist stops knock-
ing.”

“He will come five times that day, in case you have gone out.
But after his last visit, he will know without a doubt,
To take the roses to the place where I've instructed him,
And place the roses where we are together once again.”

第三章 定语从句练习答案

3.1 将下列每一组中的两个简单句合并为一个定语从句, 用第二个句子作定语。

1. The girl who won the race is happy.
2. The student who sits next to me is from America.
3. The boy who fell from a tree was not badly hurt.
4. The taxi driver who took me to the airport was friendly.
He.
5. I can't remember the name of the person to whom I gave the money.
6. The employees who had reached the age of sixty-five had to retire.
7. The teacher spoke to the boys whose work was below standard.
8. The people whose houses I rented were friendly.
9. He is the professor whose grammar course I am taking.
10. That is the man whose son died in that air crash.
11. The man whose car was stolen called the police.
12. The man whose picture is in the newspaper is famous.
13. I have a neighbor whose dog barks all day long.
14. The girl whose camera I borrowed is a good friend of mine.
15. The church where we were married was built in 1400.
16. She told me her address, which I wrote down on a piece of paper.
17. We are studying sentences which contain adjective claus-

es.

18. The exhibition which my friend took me to see was not very interesting.
19. John isn't home yet, which worried me.
20. Jack was fired from his job, which surprised all of his co-workers.
21. My roommate always plays music at the dorm, which really gets on my nerves.

3.2 将下列定语从句中的 that 改为 who 或 which, 或省去:

22. The girl who answered the phone was polite.
23. I didn't know any of the people (who) Bill invited to his party.
24. The woman (who) I saw in the park was feeding the pigeons.
25. I like the barber who usually cuts my hair.
26. The person (who) I admire most is my father.
27. The people (who) I met at the party last night were very nice.
28. The people who live next to me have three cars.
29. The soup (which) I had for lunch was too salty.
30. The pill (which) I took made me sleepy.
31. My daughter asked me a question (which) I couldn't answer.
32. The man (who) my sister goes out with is tall, dark and handsome.
33. I couldn't understand the woman (who) I talked to on the phone.

3.3 将下列每一组中的两个简单句合并为一个定语从句，用第二个句子作定语。

34. Monday is the day when we will come.
35. He arrived in Shanghai on the day when I left.
36. July is the month when the weather is usually the hottest.
37. April Fool's Day is that special day of the year when you should play a joke on someone!
38. March 10, 1876 was the day when the first complete sentence was sent over a telephone.
39. The city where we spent our vacation was beautiful.
40. That is the restaurant where I will meet you.
41. The town where I grew up is small.
42. This is the house where they put their tools.

3.4 讨论下列空格填入 where, when 还是 which。

43. I'll never forget the day when I met you for the first time.
44. I'll never forget the days which I spent with you.
45. The day, which began brightly, ended with a violent storm.
46. The day when we don't bother to go to office but just work at home may soon come.
47. I arrived in Beijing on the day when it was snowing heavily.
48. This is the town where I was born.
49. This is the town which I want to visit most someday.
50. The ripe fruit should be stored in a place which contains

much carbon dioxide so that it can't decay rapidly.

51. The ripe fruit should be stored in a place where there is much carbon dioxide so that it can't decay rapidly.

52. The library, which was built in the 1930's, needs to be renovated.

53. I guess you can find him in the library where he works.

3.5 判断下列定语从句的正误。

54. 错误。原句应改为: He is the man who taught me English.

55. 错误。原句应改为: I gave the book to him that he needed.

56. 错误。原句应改为: The airline has a booklet which will tell you most of the important things about a trip to Europe.

57. 错误。原句应改为: The man who told me the news refused to give me his name.

58. 错误。原句应改为: The book which I bought at the bookstore was very useful.

59. 错误。原句应改为: The woman that I met yesterday was nice.

60. 错误。原句应改为: The people who live next to me are friendly.

61. 错误。原句应改为: I met a woman whose husband is a famous lawyer.

62. 错误。原句应改为: Let ABC be a triangle whose sides are of unequal length.

63. 错误。原句应改为: Do you know the people who live in that house?

64. 错误。原句应改为: The people who I met at the party last night were interesting.
65. 错误。原句应改为: I enjoyed the music which we listened to.
66. 错误。原句应改为: He dropped in on an old friend that day when he visited his club.
67. 错误。原句应改为: The day, which began brightly, ended with a violent storm.

3.6 分析下面句中所含定语从句分别属于前文所述 3 种情形中的哪一种,必要时添加逗号。

68. 限制性

69. 限制性

70. 限制性

71. 非限制性

The teacher, who comes from Canada, teaches us English.

72. 限制性

73. 限制性或非限制性均可

I saw him stand under the apple tree, which was behind the house. 暗含屋子周围只有一棵树。

I saw him stand under the apple tree which was behind the house. 暗含屋子周围有多棵树。

74. 限制性或非限制性均可

The teacher thanked the students who had given her some flowers. 对部分学生表示感谢。

The teacher thanked the students, who had given her some flowers. 非限制定语从句,补充感谢的原因。

75. 限制性或非限制性均可

He has a daughter who works in a hospital. 多个女儿。

He has a daughter, who works in a hospital. 只有一个女儿。

76. 非限制性

An elephant, which is the earth's largest land mammal, has few natural enemies other than human beings.

77. 限制性

78. 限制性

79. 非限制性

Rice, which is grown in many countries, is a staple food throughout much of the world.

80. 限制性或非限制性均可

Jane was delighted when she opened the present which was from her ex-boyfriend. 多份礼物。

Jane was delighted when she opened the present, which was from her ex-boyfriend. 只有一份礼物。

81. 限制性

3.7 用定语从句翻译下列句子。

82. I bought a book whose author was blind.

83. My office, which is small, is on the second floor of this building.

84. The book that you lent me yesterday is very interesting.

85. The teacher teaches me English, who comes from Canada.

86. The girl I work with has a boyfriend.

87. Please tell me the reason why you were late this morning.

88. They arrived on the day when it was raining.

89. He is the man who you can depend on.
 90. What is the name of the hotel where you live?
 91. The man who answered the phone told me that you were away.

3.8 单项选择 (综合练习):

- 92.C 93.A 94.B 95.B 96.A 97.C 98.A 99.A
 100.D 101.A 102.A 103.C 104.C 105.C 106.D
 107.C 108.D 109.D 110.D 111.D 112.D 113.D
 114.C 115.B 116.D 117.D 118.C 119.C 120.D

3.9 用适当的连词填空(名词从句与定语从句辨析)

121. what
 122. what
 123. that
 124. 不填
 125. that
 126. which/that
 127. why
 128. 不填
 129. which/that
 130. which/that
 131. which/that
 132. that
 133. that
 134. that
 135. what
 136. how
 137. which/that

138. why

139. which/that

140. that

状语从句

28. 状语从句概述

英语中的状语从句有九大类。这九类从句是：时间、地点、原因、目的、结果、条件、让步、比较、方式。尽管数目较多，但理解并不难。

从本质上来说，状语从句就是用不同的连词将几个分句连接起来，以表达分句之间特定的逻辑关系。例如：

- a. I've brought my umbrella *in case* it rains.
- b. I've brought my umbrella *because* it's raining.
- c. I've brought my umbrella *so that* I don't get wet.
- d. I've brought my umbrella *even though* it's not raining.
- e. You don't need an umbrella *unless* it's raining.

因此，学习状语从句关键是要掌握引导九类状语从句的有关连接词。只要记住连接词一般都能识别是何种状语从句，从而正确分析句子结构并理解句子意思。

常用连接词主要有：

副词从句种类	常用连接词
时间状语从句	when, while, as, before, after, since, till, until, as soon as
地点状语从句	where
原因状语从句	because, as, for, since
目的状语从句	so that, in order that
结果状语从句	so...that, so that, such...that
条件状语从句	if, unless
让步状语从句	although, though, even though, even if
比较状语从句	as, than
方式状语从句	as, the way

29. 状语从句的省略

在同时满足以下两点的情况下：1)当主句的主语和从句的主语一致；2)从句谓语中含有be动词。可将从句的主语和be动词省去。这种省略主要常见于时间、地点、条件及让步状语从句中。

- a. Metals expand *when (they are) heated* and contract *when (they are) cooled*. (两个when后省略they are) 金属具有热胀冷缩的特性。
- b. *When (he was) a student* in the university, he read a lot. (when后省略了he was)
- c. *While (he was) waiting*, he took out a magazine to read.
- d. A tiger can't be tamed *unless (it is) caught* very young.
若不同时满足上述条件，则从句不能省略主语和be动词。
- e. When *I* was ten years old, *my family* moved to the city.
两个主语不同，故从句不可用省略形式：*When ten years old*, my family moved to the city. (×)

30. 时间状语从句

► 1. 时间状语从句要用一般现在时表示将来

- a. I'll speak to him when he *arrives*. 不说: ... when he *will arrive*. *
- b. I'll tell him about it when he *comes* back. 不说: ... when he *will come*. *

► 2. when

意思相当于: at that time(在…时刻), 从句谓语动词通常是短暂动词, 表示某一时刻的动作。注意主句和从句的时态。

- a. I'll speak to him when he *arrives*.
- b. I'll tell him about it when he *comes* back.
- c. When I *arrived*, he *was talking* on the phone. 我到的时候, 他正在打电话。
- d. When I *got* there, he *had already left*. 我到那儿的时候, 他已经走了。
- e. When I *got* there, he *left* the office. 我到了之后, 他才离开办公室。

从句也可接延续动词, 这时从句往往用过去进行时态, 表示某一时间段内发生的动作。例如:

- f. The doorbell rang when I *was telephoning*.

► 3. while

意思相当于: during that time(在…期间), 表示某一时间段内发生的动作, 因此, 从句谓语动词通常只接延续动词。

- a. The phone rang while I was *taking* my bath.
- b. The doorbell rang while we were *watching* TV.
- c. A detective(n. 侦探)arrested a criminal and was about to handcuff(v. 上手铐) him *when* a huge gust(n. 一阵狂风)of wind *blew off* the detective's hat.

"Shall I go and fetch it?" the criminal asked.

"Do you take me for a fool?" asked the detective. "You wait here *while* I go and get it!" (此句中 go and get 尽管是短暂动词, 但两个动词连用表示的是在一段时间内的活动。)

► 4. until

- 1) 当主句谓语动词是延续动词时, 通常用肯定形式。例如:
 - a. *Wait* until he comes back. (wait 为延续性动词)
 - b. We'll *stay* here till it stops raining. (stay 为延续性动词)
 - c. Until I came back, he *was waiting* for me at my home.
- 2) 若主句谓语动词是短暂动词, 则要用否定形式。这就是我们常说的“not...until...(直到...才...)”的结构。
 - a. I *did not realize* how special my mother was until I became an adult. 直到我长大成人以后, 我才真正懂得母亲是多么地不平凡。
 - b. Ice cream *did not reach* America until about the middle of the eighteenth century.
 - c. I *didn't go* to bed until 12 o'clock last night. 我昨晚到 12 点钟才睡觉。
 - d. He *didn't leave* the office until his boss came back.
老板回来之后他才离开办公室。
- 3) 我们还可以把 not...until 变成倒装句型:

- a. *Not until* 12 o'clock last night *did I* go to bed.
 b. *Not until* his boss came back *did he* leave the office.

► 5. 表示“一…就…”

表示“一…就…”的连词有: *as soon as*, *once*, *immediately*, *the moment*。这些连词后边通常都是接短暂动词, 表示一点动作。注意分析下列句子:

- a. We will leave *as soon as* it stops raining. 雨一停, 我们就动身走。
 b. *Once* it stops raining, we will leave.
 c. It began to rain *as soon as* I arrived home. 我刚到家, 天就开始下起雨来。
 d. It began to rain *immediately* I arrived home.
 e. It began to rain *the moment* I arrived home.

► 6. by the time

by the time 意思是“在…之前”, 强调的是“一个动作在另外一个动作之前已经完成 (one event is completed before another event)”, 因此, 与 *by the time* 搭配的主句要用完成时态。注意下句时态搭配:

By the time 与两种完成时搭配。	
a. By the time they <i>arrived</i> , we <i>had already left</i> . 那天他们到达的时候, 我们已经先走了。	从句中 <i>arrived</i> 表示过去动作, 对应的主句用过去完成时。
b. By the time they <i>arrive</i> , we <i>will have already left</i> . 一会儿等他们来的时候, 我们将已经离开了。	从句中 <i>arrive</i> 表示将来动作, 对应的主句用将来完成时。

31. 地点状语从句

► 1. 通常由 *where* 引导

- a. Stay *where* you are. 呆在原处别动。
- b. After you *finish* the book, put it *where* it was. 看完这本书后, 放回原处。
- c. A driver should slow down *where* there are schools. 在有学校的地方, 司机应缓行。
- d. The tree of this kind grows favorably *where* it is wet. 这种树种是喜湿性的。

► 2. 也可由 *wherever*、*anywhere* 和 *everywhere* 引导地点状语从句。

- a. Wherever he happens to be, Clint can make himself at home. 无论在什么地方, Clint 总是无拘无束。
- b. Everywhere they appeared, there were ovations. 他们在哪里都受到热烈欢迎。

► 3. 地点状语从句有时含有条件意味。

- a. Where there is a will, there is a way. 有志者, 事竟成。
- b. Wherever there is water, air and earth, there is vegetation. 只要有水、空气和土壤, 就会有植被。
- c. Wherever there is love, there is also wealth and success! 只要有爱, 就会有财富和成功。

32. 原因状语从句

引导原因状语从句最常用的连词有: because, for, as, since。

► 1. Because

1) 语气最强, 只有它才能用来回答 why 引导的问句。所引出的原因往往是听话人所不知道的或最感兴趣的原因。

a. You want to know why I am leaving? I am leaving because I'm fed up with the job and boss. 你想知道我为什么要辞职? 我辞职是因为我厌倦了工作和我老板。

b. My friends dislike me because I'm handsome and successful. 我的朋友们都不喜欢我, 因为我又帅气, 又事业有成。

2) 它可与强调词 only、just 连用。

a. Just because I don't complain, people think I'm satisfied.

b. You shouldn't get angry *just because* some people speak ill of you.

► 2. Since

表示人们已知的事实、不须强调的原因。所以常译成“既然...”。通常放在主句前边。

a. Since Monday is Bob's birthday, let's throw him a party.

既然周一就是 Bob 的生日, 那我们为他举行一个派对吧。

b. Since everyone is here, let's get started.

- c. Since you are free tonight, why not drop in and play chess with me?
- d. Since we don't have class tomorrow, why not go out for a picnic?
- e. Since you are sleepy, you might as well go to bed.
- f. Since you are an English major, I guess you can help me with this sentence.

► 3. As

As 与 since 用法差不多，所引出的理由在说话人看来已经很明显，或已为听话人所熟悉而不须用 because 加以强调。

- a. She didn't hear us come in as she was asleep.
- b. I left a message as you weren't there.
- c. As Monday is a national holiday, all government offices will be closed.
- d. I have to speak English with them, as the guys I live with don't know any Chinese.

► 4. For

表示推断的理由，是对前面分句的内容加以解释或说明。通常放在主句后边。

- a. The days are short, for it is now December.
- b. It rained last night, for the ground is wet this morning.
试比较：Because it rained last night, the ground is wet this morning.
- c. It must be morning, for the birds are singing.
- d. Pay attention to your enemies, for they are the first to discover your mistakes.

3.3. 目的与结果状语从句

► 1. 目的状语从句常见引导词

主要有：so that, in order that。从句中常含有情态动词 will/would 或 can/could。

- a. I turned off the TV *so that* my roommate could study in peace and quiet. 我关掉了电视，好让我的室友安静地学习。
- b. When I was a child, I would take a flashlight (手电筒) to bed with me *so that* I could read comic books without my parents' knowing about it.
- c. We climbed high *so that* we could get a better view.
- d. They carved the words on the stone *so that / in order that* the future generation would remember what they had done.
- e. He has recently devoted much time to writing books on the subject *so that* the coming generation can learn the martial arts.

► 2. 结果状语从句常见的连接词

主要有：so...that, such...that，从句中一般不带情态动词，且从句都要放在主句之后。

- a. Sensible Sam: I saw you pushing your bicycle to work this afternoon.
Foolish Fred: Yes, I was *so* late *that* I didn't have time to get on it.
- b. The food is *so* bad in the school cafeteria *that* flies go

there to lose weight. 我们学校食堂饭菜质量太差,连苍蝇都去那儿减肥。

注意:不要受汉语思维的影响,把这里的 so 改成了 very 或 too,常见于考试改错题。比如我们不能说:

The food is *too/very* bad in the school cafeteria *that* flies go there to lose weight. *

► 3. 注意下句中 such 和 so 的用法区别:(重点掌握!)

so 后边直接加形容词, such 要先接冠词 a(n)

- a. He is *such a good teacher* that everyone likes him.
- b. He is *so good a teacher* that everyone likes him.

such 可修饰不可数名词, so 不可:

- c. It was *such nice weather* that we went to the beach.
 - d. It was *so nice weather* that we went to the beach. *
- 可以说:

- e. The weather was so nice that we went to the beach.

such 可修饰复数名词, so 不可:

- f. He got *such heavy boxes* that he couldn't carry them by himself.

so 可与 many, much, few, little 搭配, such 不可:

- g. I made *so many mistakes* that I failed the exam.
- h. He has *so few friends* that he is always lonely.
- i. He lost *so much money* that he didn't dare to go home.
- j. I had *so little trouble* with the test that I left half an hour early.

34. 条件状语从句

条件从句由下列词来引导：

if, unless, suppose (that), supposing (that), on condition that, providing / provided (that), so long as, as long as

- a. If it *rains* tomorrow, I will take my umbrella. (条件从句中要用现在时表示将来。)
- b. Don't worry about the mistakes you may make in conversation, *so long as* you can make yourself understood in English.
- c. I may lend you the book *on condition that* you return it to me in time.
- d. I will agree to go provided that my expenses are paid. 只要有人替我付钱，我就同意去。
- e. *Suppose* nothing happens to you. *Suppose* you live there your whole life and nothing happens. You never meet anybody, you never become anything and finally, you die one of those New York deaths and no one notices for two weeks until the smell drifts into the hallway.

35. 让步状语从句

► 1. 常见的让步状语从句的引导词

主要有：though, although, even though, even if

注意：主句前不可用 but, 但可用 yet / still。

- a. Though / Although he tried hard, (yet / still) he failed.
- b. Although I didn't know anybody at the party, I had a very

good time.

c. The family is the essential presence—the thing that never leaves you, *even if* you find you have to leave it.

d. Although Mr. Smith studied art in Paris, but his writings
A B
 attracted much more interest than his paintings.
C D

正确答案: B, 应改为: his, 即把 but 去掉。

► 2. 介词表示让步

(al)though 是连词, 后边只接从句(有时是省略形式的从句), 而 despite, in spite of, for all 是介词, 后边只接名词(短语), 不接从句。注意比较下列句子:

- a. Though *he was inexperienced*, he did a very good job. =
 In spite of *his inexperience*, ...
- b. Although *it was dangerous*, ... = Despite *the danger*,
 ...
- c. Though *the weather was bad*, ... = In spite of *the bad weather*, ...

► 3. While 位于句首, 一般表示“尽管...”, 引导让步状语从句。

- a. While I sympathize with(同意) your point of view, I can not accept it.
- b. While he has time, it doesn't mean he has capacity and patience.
- c. *While* many countries of the world celebrate their own Mother's Day at different times throughout the year, there are some countries such as Denmark, Finland,

Italy, Turkey, Australia, and Belgium which also celebrate Mother's Day on the second Sunday of May.

► 4. As 引导的倒装句，表示让步。

句型：*adj.* + *as* + 主语 + 谓语

- a. **Young as** he is, he is knowledgeable. 尽管他年龄小，知识却很渊博。
- b. **Poor as** he is, he is kind and honest. 尽管他贫穷，但他心地善良，为人诚实。

前置的也可以是：名词或副词。例如：

- c. **Much as** I respect him, I can not agree with him. 尽管我很尊重他，但我并不同意他的观点。
- d. **Hard as** he tried, he failed the exam again.
- e. **Child as** he is, he is knowledgeable. = Although he is a child, ...

36. 比较状语从句

► 1. 引导词 As

1) 结构 1: “*as* + 形容词或副词 + *as*”。

- a. The work is not as difficult as you think.
- b. Eyes are as eloquent as lips (are).

2) 结构 2: “*as* + 形容词 + *a(n)* + 可数名词单数 + *as*”。

- a. Americans tend to think from small to large. Let us take **as simple an example as** the addressing of envelopes. 美国人思维喜欢由具体到一般。我们举一个写信封地址的简单例子吧。
- b. I didn't finish **as large a part** of the work **as** he did.

- c. I didn't finish *as a large part* of the work as he did. *

在否定句中第一个 as 可用 so 代替。

► 2. 引导词 Than

1) 应是两个同类事物才能比较，如：he 和 I。不是两个同类事物是无法比较的。

- a. He is taller than I (am).

- b. The weather of the South is wetter than the North. *

例句 b 是典型的错误句子，因为 the weather of the South 和 the North 是两个截然不同的事物，无法进行比较。只能是“南方的天气”和“北方的天气”两个同类事物才能比较。故原句应该改为：

The weather of the South is wetter than *that of* the North. (为避免重复，用 that 代替 the weather)

- c. Young readers, more often than not, find the novels of
A B

Dickens far more exciting than Thackeray.
C D

正确答案：D，应改为：Thackeray's。这里比较的对象是两个作家的小说。Thackeray's 也就等于 Thackeray's novels。

2) 在有 than 的比较句子里，主句中必须有比较级形式出现。

- a. He has made *great* contributions to the company *than* anyone else. *

应将 great 改为 greater。

- b. On the whole, ambitious students are much likely to suc-
A B
ceed in their studies than are those with little ambition.
C D

正确答案：B，应改为：more likely。

► 3. “The more . . . , the more . . .”句型表示比较。

- a. *The more* she practiced, *the worse* she sang. 她练习得越多唱得越糟糕。
- b. *The nearer* it is drawn to the surface of the earth (从句), *the more* a body weighs (主句). 一个物体离地球表面越近，重量就越大。
- c. *The higher* you go (从句), *the less dense* air becomes (主句). 你升得越高，空气就会变得越稀薄。
- d. *The more* we help others, *the more* we receive in return. We advance ourselves as we help others. 帮助别人越多，我们获得的回报也越多。帮助了别人，提升了自己。
- e. Friends are lights in winter: *the older* the friend, *the brighter* the light. 朋友犹如冬日里的暖阳，愈久弥珍。
- f. *The more* you leave things to chance, *the less chance* there is for you. 你越是听天由命，机会就越少。

37. 方式状语从句

方式状语从句表示主句动作的方式，引导词有：as, as if, as though, the way 等。请看例句：

- a. When in Rome, do as the Romans do 入乡随俗。(When traveling, follow the customs of the local people.)
- b. Do as you are told. 按照吩咐的去做。
- c. Do as I say, not as I do. = Follow my advice, but don't follow my example.
- d. Do it the way you were taught. 按照教你的方式去做。

- e. He acted as though/as if he had nothing to do with it. 从他的表现看，好像这事与他无关。

温故知新：In Brief

前面说过，学习状语从句关键是要掌握引导九类状语从句的有关连接词。只要记住连接词一般都能识别是何种状语从句，从而正确分析句子结构并理解句子意思。相反，若在应试中，首先要仔细分析各分句之间的逻辑关系，然后填入适当的连词。

同时，还要了解各状语从句在使用时自己独特的用法，比如 although 不能和 but 连用；as 表示让步要用倒装结构；时间状语从句中应特别注意时态搭配等等。

第四章 状语从句练习

4.1 完成下列句子, 注意动词时态

1. A black cat ran across the road when I _____ (drive) my car to work this morning.
2. Last night I _____ (go) to bed until I finished my homework.
3. We _____ (stay) here until it stops raining.
4. Tonight I will go to bed after I _____ (finish) my homework.
5. By the time the firemen arrived, the whole building _____ (burn down).
6. By the time the firemen _____ (arrive), the whole building will have burned down.
7. By the time I leave this city, I _____ (live) here for four months.

4.2 将下列简单句合并成目的状语从句, 注意使用情态动词。

8. I am going to leave the party early. I want to be able to get a good night's sleep.
9. Harry brought his umbrella. He wanted to be sure he didn't get wet.
10. I turned on the TV. I wanted to listen to the news.
11. The little boy pretended to be sick. He wanted to stay home from school.
12. Clint took some change from his pocket. He wanted to buy a newspaper.

13. I put the milk in the refrigerator. I wanted to make sure it didn't spoil.
14. I unplugged the phone. I didn't want to be interrupted while I was sleeping.

4.3 用 so...that 或 such...that 合并句子。

15. This tea is good. I think I'll have another cup.
16. The car was expensive. We couldn't afford to buy it.
17. I had to wear my coat. It was a cold day.
18. I don't feel like going to class. We're having beautiful weather.
19. She talked too fast. I couldn't understand her.
20. The black leopard is very dark. Its spots are difficult to see.
21. I've met too many people in the last few days. I can't remember all of their names.
22. It took us only ten minutes to get there. There was little traffic.
23. There were few people at the meeting. It was cancelled.
24. I have too much trouble. I need your help.
25. The classroom has comfortable chairs. The students find it easy to fall asleep.

4.4 单项选择 (综合练习):

26. We heard a loud sound of drums beating _____ the parade marched.
A. till
B. while
C. the moment

- D. where
27. _ _ _ he left, we began to have our dinner.
A. When
B. While
C. Until
D. Since
28. We shall call on her as soon _____.
A. as she will come
B. as she came
C. as she comes
D. she comes
29. _____ Charles started a job, he did it _____ it was finished.
A. Since... where
B. Once... till
C. Each time... once
D. The moment... as
30. They decided to chase the cow away _____ it did more damage.
A. unless
B. until
C. before
D. although
31. You see the lightening _____ it happens, but you hear the thunder later.
A. the moment
B. for a moment
C. at the moment
D. in a moment

32. _____, his family moved to America.
- A. When still a baby
 - B. When a baby still
 - C. When he was still a baby
 - D. When being still a baby
33. Not until I shouted at the top of my voice _____ his head.
- A. that he turned
 - B. did he turn
 - C. he didn't turn
 - D. he had turned
34. They looked so happy today, _____ they had a good bargain.
- A. for
 - B. in order that
 - C. when
 - D. except
35. _____ he has had a reputation for being a careful driver, his accident came as quite a surprise.
- A. Since
 - B. Since that
 - C. Because
 - D. For
36. She didn't hear what you said _____ she was completely absorbed in her work.
- A. that
 - B. now that
 - C. because
 - D. lest

37. _____ he will not accept the offer, I have to find someone else.
A. Until
B. Though
C. As soon as
D. As
38. This is an ideal site for a university _____ it is far from the downtown area.
A. provided that
B. that
C. so that
D. for
39. It was _____ he was so young that he couldn't do it.
A. as
B. since
C. for
D. because
40. _____ we have all the materials ready, we should begin the new task at once.
A. Since that
B. Since now
C. By now
D. Now that
41. Dew is formed _____ the grass is thick.
A. while
B. where
C. when
D. until
42. The picture is not hanging _____ it should on the wall.

- A. until
B. wherever
C. where
D. when
43. You can find him _____ he works.
A. when
B. where
C. which
D. as
44. Poor _____ he is, he is honest and kind.
A. as
B. however
C. because
D. although
45. _____ lay eggs, but some give birth to live young.
(1999 - 8 - 3)
A. Although most insects
B. Most insects
C. Despite most insects
D. Most insects that
46. airsickness is produced by a disturbance of the inner ear, _____ psychogenic factors, such as fear, also play a part. (1999 - 10 - 15)
A. in spite of
B. neither
C. nor
D. although
47. He wrote down the address _____ he should not forget it.

- A. in case not
B. lest
C. in order that
D. of fear that
48. Let's take the front seats _____ we may have a better view.
A. so as to
B. in order to
C. in order
D. so that
49. _____ many children have bought balloons _____ the store is now out of stock.
A. So... that
B. Such... that
C. Such a... that
D. So... as to
50. It is _____ weather that I would like to go to the beach.
A. so nice
B. such nice
C. such a nice
D. so nice a
51. She told us _____ stories that we all laughed.
A. so funny
B. such funny
C. funny such
D. so fun
52. Let's finish our work _____ we can be free this evening.
A. now that

- B. than
C. because
D. so that
53. Batteries must be kept in dry places _____ electricity should leak away.
A. where
B. lest
C. that
D. unless
54. An adult human must take eight steps to go _____ as a giraffe does in one stride.
A. as far
B. the farther
C. how far
D. farther
55. The motorist looked over the engine carefully _____ on the way.
A. so that it should go wrong
B. lest it should go wrong
C. in order that it should not go wrong
D. for fear that it should not go wrong
56. This approach is superior to that one _____ it provides explicit accounts.
A. in which
B. in this way
C. in that
D. in order that
57. _____, he remains stupid.
A. Though his learning

- B. Through all his learning
C. For all his learning
D. However his learning
58. _____, electrons are still smaller.
A. As small atoms are
B. Small as atoms are
C. As atoms are small
D. Are small atoms
59. It was not until the eleventh century that _____
A. the detective found out the truth
B. did the detective find out the truth
C. had the detective find out the truth
D. had the detective found out the truth
60. _____, he failed to pass the test.
A. Hard although he tried
B. He tried hard, though
C. Hard as he tried
D. Though hard as he tried
61. _____ you fell in love with your boss, what would you do?
A. Provide
B. Supposing
C. Unless
D. Except
62. _____, the fire men were unable to quench the fire.
A. Try they would
B. As they tried
C. What they tried
D. Try as they would

63. Angiosperms inhabit relatively diverse environments and may be found _ ____ higher plants can survive.
A. there
B. where
C. somewhere
D. then
64. You can arrive in Beijing earlier for the meeting _____ you don't mind traveling by air.
A. provided
B. unless
C. though
D. until
65. _____, he still retained the use of all his faculties.
A. Because he was old and weak
B. As he was old and weak
C. Unless he was old and weak
D. Old and weak as he was
66. The agency agreed to do the job _____ that the fee was high enough.
A. so long
B. only
C. such
D. provided
67. It was not until she had arrived home _____ remembered her appointment with the doctor.
A. when she
B. that she
C. and she
D. she

68. The European tourists tried cooking their meal _ _ _
American Indians had used to.
A. by the way
B. with the way
C. the way
D. in a way
69. _____ no conclusive evidence exists, many experts believe that the wheel was invented only once and then diffused to the rest of the world.
A. Even
B. But
C. Although
D. So
70. _____ I admit that he is a good man, I don't mean that he has no weak points.
A. Because
B. Unless
C. Suppose
D. While
71. Gorillas are quiet animals, _____ they are capable of making about 20 different sounds.
A. whether
B. which
C. even though
D. as well as

第四章 状语从句练习答案

4.1 完成下列句子，注意动词时态

1. was driving
2. didn't go
3. will stay
4. finish
5. had burned down
6. arrive
7. will have lived

4.2 将下列简单句合并成目的状语从句，注意使用情态动词。

8. I'm going to leave the party early so that I can get a good night's sleep.
9. Harry brought his umbrella so that he could not get wet.
10. I turned on the TV in order that I could listen to the news.
11. The little boy pretended to be sick so that he could stay home from school.
12. Clint took some change from his pocket so that he could buy a newspaper.
13. I put the milk in the refrigerator so that it wouldn't spoil.
14. I unplugged the phone so that I wouldn't be interrupted while I was sleeping.

4.3 用 so...that 或 such...that 合并句子。

15. This tea is good. I think I'll have another cup.

This tea is so good that I will have another cup.

This is such good tea that I will have another cup.

16. The car was expensive. We couldn't afford to buy it.

The car was so expensive that we couldn't afford to buy it.

It was so expensive a car that we couldn't afford to buy it.

It was such an expensive car that we couldn't afford to buy it.

17. I had to wear my coat. It was a cold day.

It was such a cold day that I had to wear my coat.

It was so cold a day that I had to wear my coat.

18. I don't feel like going to class. We're having beautiful weather.

We are having such beautiful weather that I don't feel like going to class.

19. She talked too fast. I couldn't understand her.

She talked so fast that I couldn't understand her.

20. The black leopard is so dark that its spots are difficult to see.

21. I've met so many people in the last few days that I can't remember all of their names.

22. It took us only ten minutes to get there. There was little traffic.

There was such little traffic that it took us only ten minutes to get there.

23. There were few people at the meeting. It was cancelled.

There were so few people at the meeting that it was cancelled.

24. I have so much trouble that I need your help.

25. The classroom has such comfortable chairs that the students find it easy to fall asleep.

4.4 单项选择 (综合练习):

26. B 27. A 28. C 29. B 30. C 31. A 32. C 33. B
34. A 35. A 36. C 37. D 38. D 39. D 40. D 41. B
42. C 43. B 44. A 45. B 46. D 47. B 48. D 49. A
50. B 51. B 52. D 53. B 54. A 55. B 56. C 57. C
58. B 59. A 60. C 61. B 62. D 63. B 64. A 65. D
66. D 67. B 68. C 69. C 70. D 71. C

时态(一): 完成时态

完 成 动 作

- 现在完成 (have/has done)
- 过去完成 (had done)
- 将来完成 (will have done)

38. 完成时态概述

形式: have done

意义: 完成时态表示的是在某一特定时刻(现在、过去或将来)之前开始发生的并持续到这一特定时刻或对这一特定时刻有影响的一个活动。

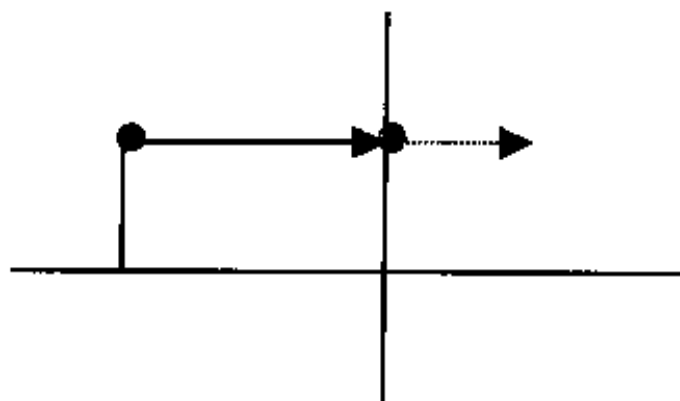
时态与用法	图解	例句	解释
现在完成时 在现在之前(即过去)开始发生并持续到现在或对现在有影响的动作。		i. I <i>have learned</i> 2000 words so far.	在“现在”之前开始发生的动作 learned 持续到现在。
过去完成时 在过去之前(即过去的过去)开始发生的并持续到过去或对过去有影响的动作。		i. I <i>had learned</i> 1000 words by the end of last year.	在“the end of last year”之前开始发生的动作 learned 持续到 the end of last year。
将来完成时 在将来之前(可能是过去、现在或将来)开始发生的并持续的将来或对将来有影响的动作。		i. I <i>will have learned</i> 3000 words by the end of next year.	在“the end of next year”之前开始发生的动作 learned 持续到 the end of next year。

第一节 现在完成时态(have/has done)

39. 现在完成时态用法(一):延续到现在的动作或状态

开始于过去的动作一直持续到现在,而且还可能继续持续下去。谓语动词一般为延续性动词。

图解:



(黑点表示现在和过去两个时间点;实箭头表示动作在延续;虚箭头表示动作可能继续持续下去。)

请看例句:

- a. An old woman walked out into the middle of the street.
The policeman yelled to her, "Don't you know what it means when I hold up my hand?" The lady said, "Sure I do. *I have been* a school teacher for 28 years now." (一直延续的状态)
- b. I *have lived* here for 3 years.

到说话这一时刻,我仍住在这里,而且还可能继续住下去。如果是我现在正在搬家时说的这句话,则 live 这一事

件只持续到目前为止。

- c. The teacher *has taught* in this school since I came here.
- d. *I've worked* in this company since I left school. 我毕业以后就一直在这家公司上班。
- e. Since time began, man *has lived* in fear of fire. 自古以来, 人们就害怕发生火灾。

或者, 由上下文明确告知, 开始于过去的动作只持续到说话时刻为止即已结束。例如:

- a. A: *Have you waited* long?
B: *I've waited* for three hours. (B 见到了要等的人 A, 所以 wait 就此结束。)
- b. *I've waited* for him all day; I don't want to wait any longer.

这种现在完成时的特点:

- 1) 谓语动词一般为延续性动词。
- 2) 动作发生的时间是过去, 但这一动作持续到现在, 而且还可能继续持续下去。
- 3) 与这种用法的现在完成时态连用的时间状语通常是表示“一段时间”的时间状语, 以说明某个动作或状态持续了多久。请看下文。

40. 与现在完成时态搭配的时间状语

下列时间均表示“从过去开始并一直延续到现在”: (记住这些时间状语!)

► 1. since + 时间点

- a. *I've worked* in this company since 1980.

- b. I've **worked** in this company since I **left** school. (从句用一般过去时)

注意不能说: since three years. 而要说 since three years ago.

► 2. for + 时间段

- a. I've **worked** in this company **for three years**.
b. Great changes **have taken place** in Beijing **for the past few years**. 近几年, 北京发生了很大的变化。

► 3. “到目前为止……”

until now, up until now, up to now, up till now, so far

- a. We **have up until now failed** to take any action to decide on a common language that would further communication between nations. 到目前为止, 我们尚未采取任何行动来决定一门国际通用语言, 以促进国际间的交流。

► 4. “在最近几世纪/年/月以来……”

in the past few years, over the past few years, during the last three months, for the last few centuries, through centuries, throughout history 等。例如:

- a. **Throughout history** man **has had** to accept the fact that all living things must die, for the very nature of life includes death. 自古以来, 人类就必须接受这样的事实: 一切生命体最终都会消亡, 因为生命的本质包含了死亡。
b. **Through centuries** the bizarre antics of sleepwalkers **have puzzled** police, **perplexed** scientists and **fascinated** writers. 几个世纪以来, 梦游人古怪的行为让警察和科学家

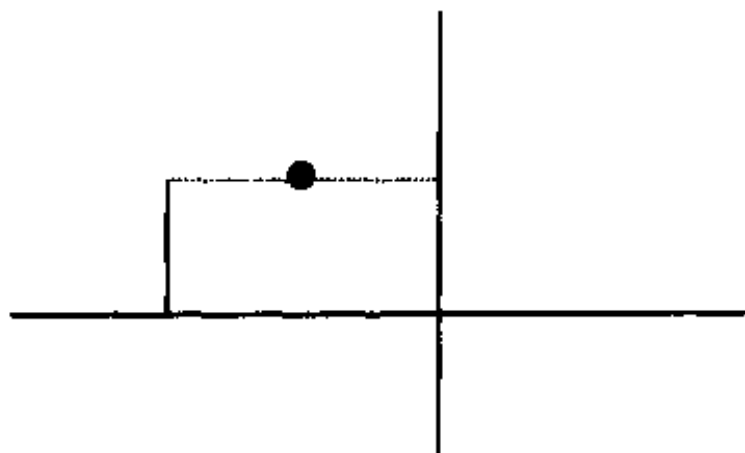
们大为困惑，同时也让作家们为之着迷。

41. 现在完成时态用法(二):

过去发生但与现在仍有联系的动作或状态

表示在不确定的过去发生的某一动作对现在仍有影响。谓语动词一般为短暂性动词。这种完成时态是中国学生最难以理解的，也常常和一般过去时混淆不清。

图解：



(图中黑点表示过去某一时刻发生的动作；虚线表示过去发生的动作对现在仍有影响。)

请看例句：

- a. He *has broken* his leg. (他的腿跌断了。)言外之意是：Now he is still in hospital, so he can't go for an outing with his classmates. (他现在还在住院，所以不能和同学们一起出去郊游。)
- b. He *broke* his leg. (他腿摔断过。)单纯表示一种过去的经历，但现在腿已好了。
- c. A modern girl went to the theatre with a vest and a pair of

slippers. The ticket-examiner turned her away very politely: "Miss, NO ADMISSION WITH SLIPPERS." "Really?" the girl took off the slippers and carried them in her hands, "Then I will go in barefootedly." "Oh, my god!" the ticket-examiner cried out, "Fortunately, I *have not told* her NO ADMISSION WITH A VEST."

d. A: What *has happened* to Jane? She is crying.

B: She broke the dining-room window. She has to face the music (勇于承担后果) when her father gets home.

e. Mr. Odds works in a bank and lives on his own. The only family he has is in the next town: his sister lives there with her husband, and her son, Mark. Last week Mr. Odds had a surprise. He drove home from the bank at the usual time, driving neither too slowly nor too fast; he parked his car where he always parked it, out of the way of other cars, and he went inside to make his evening meal. Straight away, there was a knock at the door. Mr. Odds opened the door, to find a policeman standing on the doorstep.

"What *have I done* wrong?" Mr. Odds asked himself.

"*Have I driven* on the wrong side of the road? *Has* there *been* some trouble at the bank? *Have I forgotten* to pay an important bill?"

"Hello, Uncle," said the policeman, "My name's Mark."
欧兹先生在一家银行工作, 独自生活。他惟一的亲人——他的姐姐, 与她的丈夫及儿子迈克住在邻近的一个镇上。上周欧兹先生遇上了一回让他吃惊的事。他照常从银行下班后开车回家, 车速不快也不慢。他把车停在老地方, 没有挡住其他车的路。然后进门就开始做晚饭。很快, 就

有人敲门。欧兹先生打开门，看见台阶上站着一位警察。
欧兹先生心想：“我做错什么了吗？是开车逆行了？是银行工作中出了问题？还是某个重要账单我忘了付钱？”
“你好，舅舅，”那位警察说道，“我是迈克。”

- f. You should have put the milk into icebox; I expect it _____ undrinkable by now.
- A. became
B. had become
C. has become
D. becomes

正确答案：C

句意：你本该把牛奶放在冰箱里，我想现在这牛奶已经不能喝了。

“牛奶变质”是过去某一时刻的动作，但其影响延续到现在，即现在牛奶已经不能喝了。

这种现在完成时特点下文将详细讨论。

42. 第二种现在完成时态使用技巧

► 1. 这种完成时态的肯定句不与“一段时间”的时间状语连用

这种完成时态由于谓语动词通常是短暂动词(指动作在短时间或瞬间内即已终止，而不再延续。常见的这类动词有：come, go, leave, kill, die, lose, buy, start, give, marry, join, bring, etc.)，因此与它连用的时间状语不能是指“一段时间”。比如下列句子都是典型的错误句子：

- a. I have heard from my girlfriend since I came to America. *
b. I have bought this pair of shoes for a year. *

- c. He has left his hometown for 3 years. *

以上句子均是典型错误的句子。因为句子谓语动词都是短暂性的,不能表示延续。因而不能与 since 和 for 引导的表示一段持续性时间的时间状语连用。这种错误句子的改正有多种方式,现以最后一例句为例:

- a. He left his hometown 3 years ago.
b. It's 3 years since he left his hometown.
c. He hasn't come back since he left his hometown 3 years ago.
d. He *has been away from* his hometown for 3 years.

不过, 终止性动词的完成时句子若用否定式,表示尚未发生的事情,则可作为一种状态,从而可以表示延续。

- a. Beggar: Madam, I *haven't seen* a piece of meat *for weeks*.

Lady: Mary, please show this poor man the ham we bought just now.

乞丐:夫人,几个星期以来我没见过一片肉了。

夫人:玛丽,把我们刚才买的那根火腿给他瞧瞧。

- b. I *haven't seen* a film *for weeks*.
c. I *haven't heard* from my girlfriend *since I came to America*.
d. I *haven't bought* a pair of shoes *for a year*.

► 2. 与不确定时间的时间状语连用

这种现在完成时态可以不与任何时间状语连用,也可以同一些表示不确定的时间状语连用,如: already(已经), yet(只用在疑问句或否定句中), lately(最近), often, just(刚刚,方才), never(从不,从未发生过)等。例如:

- a. A: Would you like something to eat?
B: No, thanks. I' *ve just had* dinner. (刚吃过饭, 现在不饿)
- b. The leading expert on sleep in America claims that he *has never seen* a sleepwalker. 这位美国著名的睡眠研究专家声称, 他从未见过梦游人。
- c. *Has it stopped* raining yet? 雨停了吗?
- d. He *hasn' t arrived* yet. 他还没到。
- e. He *has already arrived*. 他已经到了。
- f. I *have often thought* that it would be perfect if we could fly without any aid. 我时常在想, 如果我们能够独自飞翔该多好啊。

► 3. 具有“新闻”性质

这种现在完成时态经常用来表示最近才发生的动作, 提供最新消息, 因而具有“新闻”性质。

- a. The President *has been assassinated*. 总统被暗杀了。
- b. He can' t go on holiday because he *has broken* his leg.

这种现在完成时态强调的是事件的内容, 而不是事件发生的过去具体时间。因而, 在实际生活对话中, 通常用现在完成时开始问答, 随着对话的继续, 动作发生的过去时间在说话人的脑子里已经确定了。所以, 继续讨论时则用一般过去时。请认真体会下而对话:

- a. A: *Have you seen* the film “Forrest Gump”? (《阿刚正传》)(询问现在对电影内容是否了解)
B: Yes, I *have*. (现在知道电影内容)
A: When *did* you see it? (关心看电影的过去具体时间)

B: I *saw* it last Spring. (给出具体时间)

A: *Did* you see it alone? (询问当时情况)

B: No, I *saw* it with my boyfriend. (提供过去事实)

b. A: The President *has been assassinated*.

B: Really? When *did* that happen? (问具体的时间, 用一般过去时。)

A: He *was killed* last night when he spoke in crowd.

c. A: I hear that famous Chinese comedian *has died*.

B: Really? When *did* she die?

A: She *was dead* late last night.

d. A: *Has* the boss come yet?

B: Yes, he has. He *is* in his office now.

A: When *did* he come?

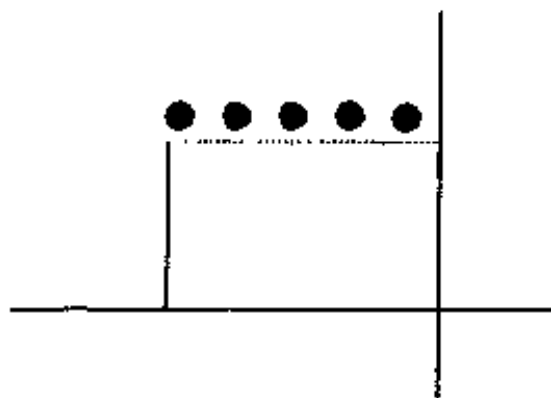
B: He *came* at 9 o'clock. He *asked* about you.

4.3. 现在完成时态用法(三):

到目前的一个时间段内重复发生的动作

表示到目前为止的一个时间段内重复发生的动作。

图解:



(图中每一个黑点表示一次动作; 虚线表示与现在有联系)

请看例句：

我们看看克林顿在 2001 年 1 月 18 日卸任演说时，怎样吹嘘自己政绩的：

- a. In all the work I **have done** as president, every decision I **have made**, every executive action I **have taken**, every bill I **have proposed** and **signed**, I've **tried** to give all Americans the tools and conditions to build the future of our dreams, in a good society, with a strong economy, a cleaner environment, and a freer, safer, more prosperous world. (selection of President Bill Clinton's farewell address to the nation on Jan. 18, 2001.)

(在过去的八年里,)作为总统,我所做的每一项工作,每一个决策,采取的每一个行政措施,以及提议并签署的每一个法案,都是在尽力为美国人民提供途径和创造条件,来实现美国未来的梦想——社会稳定,经济繁荣,环境美好,进而使得全世界更自由、更安全、更繁荣。

在这里,“小克”不厌其烦地使用完成时态,正是表示八年总统任职期间,他“重复不断”地在 have done, have made decisions, have taken action, have proposed and signed bills。

再看下面布什总统 2002 年 2 月 22 日在清华大学的演说中,如何使用完成时态的这一“重复动作”思维:

- b. During the 30 years since, America and China **have exchanged** many handshakes of friendship and commerce. And as we **have had** more contact with each other, the citizens of both countries **have gradually learned** more about each other. And that's important. 自从那时以来的三十年(指 Nixon 于 1972 年首次访华到 2002 年这 30 年)当中,美国和中国已经握过多次的友谊之手和商业之

手。随着我们两国间接触的日益频繁, 我们两国的国民也逐渐地加深了对彼此的了解, 这是非常重要的。

- c. A total of 36832 fires in China **have killed** 971 people during the first quarter of the year, injuring 1228 and causing 310 million yuan in direct economic losses, a source with the statistics said. 根据统计显示, 今年第一季度全国发生火灾 36832 起, 死亡 971 人, 伤 1228 人, 造成直接经济损失 3.1 亿元。
- d. For more than eighty years, scientists **have argued** over whether life exists on the planet Mars. 八十多年以来, 科学家们一直就火星上是否有生命存在这一问题不断进行争论。
- e. Mary told her friend about her husband's poor memory. "My husband is losing his memory. But I can't complain. I **have had** three birthdays this year."
- f. We **have taken** three tests so far this week.
- g. I **have made** many new friends since I came to Beijing.
- h. I **have written** my girlfriends one hundred love letters since we met.
- i. Great as Newton was, many of his ideas _____ today and are being modified by the work of scientists of our time. (97.1CET - 4)

- A. are to challenge
- B. may be challenged
- C. are challenging
- D. have been challenged

正确答案: D

最后, 需要说明的是, 这里的“重复发生”和现在完成时的第一种“一直在延续”的用法有时难以区分。但是, 死扣这种动

作是“重复发生”还是在“一直延续”是无多大意义的，我们只要真正理解现在完成时有这三种思维方式即可。

4.4. 其他使用现在完成时的结构

► 1. This / That / It is + 序数词 + 名词 + that + 现在完成时。例如：

- a. It is the *third* time that I' *ve come* to Beijing.
- b. It is the *fifth* time that someone has knocked at my door.
- c. ——This is the *tenth* cup of coffee that I' *ve drunk* this evening.
——How are you going to be able to fall asleep later if you keep on like this?

► 2. This/That/It is + 最高级或 only 修饰名词 + 现在完成时。

- a. This is the *most interesting* movie that I' *ve ever seen*.
- b. “Oh Jesus, you' *ve got the biggest* cavity (洞) that I' *ve ever seen*!” the dentist exclaimed as he examined a new patient. “The *biggest* cavity I' *ve ever seen*!” The patient snapped (厉声说), “You don' t have to repeat it.” “I didn' t,” replied the dentist, “That was an echo.” “天哪！这是我见过的最大的牙洞！”一位牙医在检查一个病人时说道。“我所见过的最大的牙洞！”病人厉声说：“你也用不着说两遍呀。”牙医回答说：“我没有呀，刚才那是回声。”
- c. This is the *best* wine I have ever drunk.
- d. It is the *worst* book I have ever read.
- e. This is the *hardest* job I have ever had.

f. This is the *only* book he has written.

顺便提及的是,在上述两种句型中,若是“*It was the second/best...*”,*that* 后边的句子则用过去完成时态。例如:

a. *It was* the fifth time that someone *had knocked* at my door that night.

上述两种用法,其实就是现在完成时的“重复性动作”这一思维。

综上所述,现在完成时总是与现在有着密切的联系;或是表示到现在为止这一段时间的“一直在延续”或“重复发生”的动作或状态;或是表示影响现状的事件(第二种现在完成时用法)。

45. 现在完成时与一般过去时比较

比较 1: 常常让中国学生将“现在完成时的”与“一般过去时”混淆不清的是现在完成时的第二种用法。因为此时完成时表示的也是过去的动作或情况,只是当我们强调过去的事情对现在仍有意义或仍有重要影响时才用现在完成时。

比较:

a. He can't go on holiday because he *has broken* his leg.

(他的腿跌断了。)言外之意: Now he is still in hospital, so he can't go for an outing with his classmates. (他现在还在住院,所以不能和同学们一起出去郊游。)

b. He *broke* his leg. (他腿摔断过。)单纯是表示一种过去的经历,但现在腿已好了。

c. One of your friends is driving a sports car but he seems to be very nervous and not sure what to do.

You may ask: *Have you driven* a sports car before?

He may reply: No, this is the first time that I've *driven* a

sports car.

上句显然就是因为看到你朋友现在的表现——“他很紧张”的样子，你提出了怀疑：问他是否在过去“开过车”——于是将现在和过去联系起来了。

- d. **Did** you drive to the party? 那天你是开车去参加晚会的吗？（这只是单纯表示过去。）

比较：

a. I **haven't seen** him this morning.

b. I **didn't see** him this morning.

不同的时态，表明了说话的时间不同：

a. 句用了现在完成时，而完成时是要与“现在”发生联系的，故 a. 句说话的时间是“this morning”。

b. 句用的是一般过去时，说明 this morning 已经成为过去时间，故 b. 句说话的时间是在“今天下午”或“今天晚上”。

c. I have called him three times this morning.

d. I called him three times this morning.

同理，c. 句用了完成时，“强调的是到现在为止的一个时间段内重复的动作”，故 c. 句说话的时间是在“this morning”。d. 句用的是一般过去时，一般过去时表明事情发生在过去，与现在没有什么联系，故 d. 句说话的时间是在“今天下午”或“今天晚上”。

比较 2: 在用于延续性动词时两种时态的区别：

请比较如下例句：

a. He lives in Beijing. He **has lived** here for 3 years. （还可能将继续住在这里。）

b. He **lived** in Beijing for 3 years and then emigrated to America. （曾经住过，但现在已搬走了。）

- c. He *has been* in the army for 6 years. (他人伍以来已六年了。)
- d. He *was* in the army for 6 years. (他当过六年的兵, 现在不是了。)
- e. I *have smoked* for 2 years. (我有两年的烟龄了。)
- f. I *smoked* for 2 years. (我抽过两年的烟, 但现在戒了。)

第二节 过去完成时态 (had done)

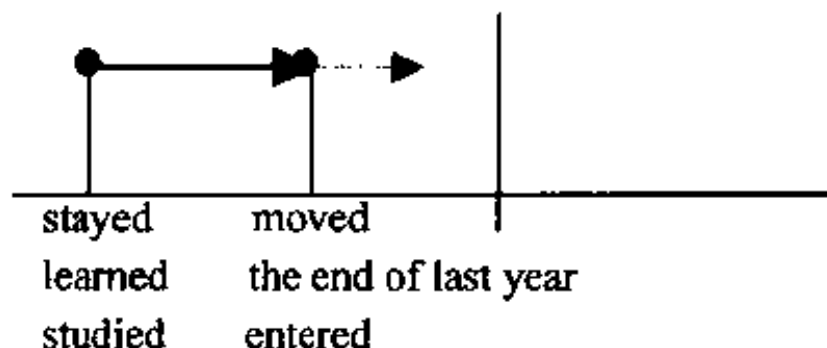
46. 过去完成时

现在完成时表示一个开始于现在之前(即过去)并在现在仍持续或刚刚结束的动作。同理类推, 过去完成时也可以用来表示在过去某一时刻之前(即过去的过去)就已开始的动作, 这一动作: 1) 在该过去时刻仍然在继续, 或在该过去时刻刚刚停止; 2) 在该过去时刻之前的某一时刻停止的动作; 3) 在该过去时刻之前的一段时间内重复的动作。下面举例具体说明:

- 1. 如同现在完成时的第一种用法的过去完成时。开始于过去之前(即过去的过去)的动作或状态在过去这一时刻仍在持续。

具体来说就是表示一个动作或状态在过去某一时间之前已经开始, 这一动作或状态一直持续到这一过去时间, 并且到这一过去时间还未结束并仍有可能继续持续下去。

图解：



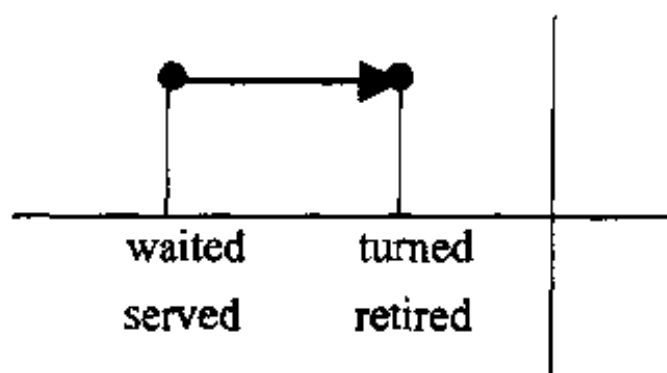
(图中虚线箭头表示动作可能继续持续下去)

请看例句：

- a. I **had stayed** in America for two years when he **moved** here. (moved 是过去的动作, stayed 发生在 moved 之前, 即过去的过去; 在 moved 之后还将会继续 stayed。)
- b. I **had learned** 1000 words by the end of last year. (learned 在过去时间 the end of last year 之前已开始发生, 到“去年底”之后还将可能持续。)
- c. He **had collected** ten books of stamps by the end of last month.
- d. We **had studied** English for six years when we entered college.
- e. It **had snowed** for a long time when I woke up.
- f. ——It's already 10 o'clock. I guess Bob and Amy won't be coming to the party.
——They called at nine to say that they' **d been held up**.

或由上下文明确告知动作或状态持续到过去这一时刻即停止。

图解:



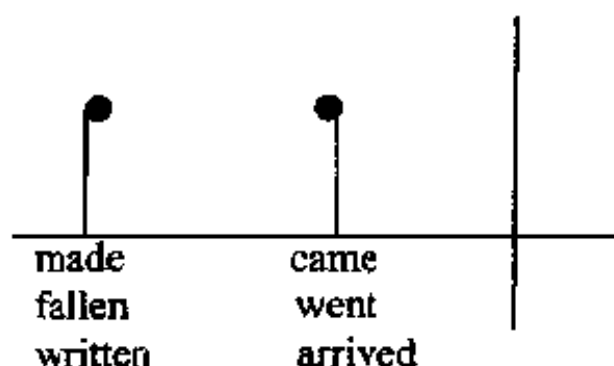
请看例句:

- a. Former Japanese Prime Minister Keizo Obuchi, who *had been* in a coma (昏迷) for six weeks, *died* of a cerebral (大脑的) infarction(梗塞) at a Tokyo hospital. 日本前首相小渊惠三, 在长达六星期的昏迷之后, 因大脑梗塞死于东京的一家医院。
- b. I *had waited* for her for two hours in such a severe winter when she eventually *turned* up, which of course drove me mad.
- c. There *had been* fifty colleges in our city up till 1993.

► 2. 如同现在完成时的第二种用法, 表示开始于过去之前的动作到过去这一时刻之前即已停止。

具体来说就是表示一个动作或状态在过去某一时间之前已经开始, 这一动作或状态在这一过去时间之前即告结束, 而并没有持续到这一过去时刻。这时过去完成时的动作通常是短暂动作。

图解：

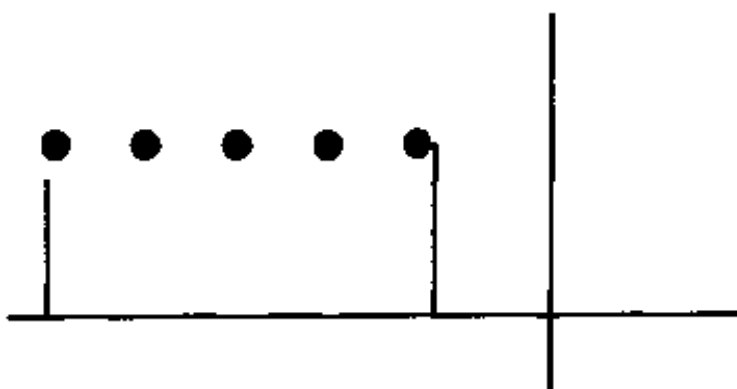


请看例句：

- a. She *had made* everything ready before I *came*.
- b. Her baby *had fallen* asleep when she *went* into the room.
- c. Before John *got* home, Mary *had gone* to bed.
- d. I *had just poured* myself a cup of tea when the phone *rang*. When I came back from answering it, the cup was empty. Somebody *had drunk* the tea or *thrown* it away.

► 3. 如同现在完成时的第三种用法，在过去之前开始的动作，在过去之前的一段时间内重复发生。

图解：



请看例句：

- a. I *had written* her 100 letters when she finally *promised* to

marry me.

- b. I *had proposed* to her five times, but she still refused to marry me.

► 4. 过去完成时的其他用法

- 1) intend, mean, hope, want, plan, suppose, expect, think, propose, wish 等动词的过去完成时可表示过去未能实现的计划、设想、意图或希望等。

- a. I *had planned* to go shopping with you but my mother came to see me just when I was about to go.
b. She *had hoped* that he would come to date her, but he didn't show up.
c. I *had intended* to see you, but I was busy.
d. They *had hoped* to see you off at the airport, but they got there too late.

- 2) 用在 “It was the + 序数词 (first, second...) 或最高级... tha...” 句型中。例如:

- a. Last week I attended an international conference and saw Mr. Machine. It was the third time that I *had met* him.

47. 一般过去时与过去完成时的比较

比较 1: 两个或两个以上相继发生的动作, 用 and 或 but 按动作发生的先后顺序连接, 此时要用一般过去时, 而不用过去完成时。过去完成时则强调主语在过去某一时刻回顾更早的动作。具体来说, 当我们在谈论过去某一事件时, 想到了在这之前已发生的某事, 这时用过去完成时态。例如:

- a. He *opened* the door and *entered*, but *found* nobody.

- b. He *served* in the army for ten years; then *retired* and *married*. His children are now at school. 他当过 10 年兵, 然后退伍并结了婚。他的孩子现在都在上学。
- c. He *had served* in the airforce for ten years before he *died* in the jet-crash incident. 在这次撞机事故中他牺牲了, 在此之前他在空军服役过 10 年。
- d. I realized that we *had met* before. 不能说: ... we *met* before.
- e. I heard voices and realized that there *were* several people in the next room. 我听见有人说话, 知道隔壁房间里有人。
- f. I saw empty glasses and cigar butts on the table and realized that someone *had been* in the room. 我看见桌上有空杯子和雪茄烟蒂, 知道屋子里有人来过。

比较 2: 在表示两个相继发生的动作时, 用过去完成时可以表示在一个动作完成以后, 另一个动作才开始发生, 从而使得两个动作相互独立, 彼此脱离开来。用一般过去时, 则可能表示一个动作“导致”另一个动作, 或两个动作之间有一种因果关系。例如:

- a. When I *had opened* all the windows I sat down and had a cup of tea. 不宜说: When I *opened* ...。我把所有的窗子都打开后, 就坐下来喝了杯茶。
- b. When I *opened* the window the cat jumped out. 比 When I *had opened* ... 更自然。我刚把窗子一打开, 那只猫就跳了进来。
- c. When I *had written* my letters I did some gardening. 不宜说: When I *wrote* ...。我把信写完后, 就到花园里干了些活。
- d. When I *wrote* him a letter, he came at once. 我给他去了封信后, 他立即就来了。
- e. When the singer *had sung* her song, she sat down. 这位

歌手唱完歌以后,就坐下来了。若说成 When the singer sang her song, she sat down, 则可能给人造成这种印象: 这位歌手喜欢坐着唱歌。

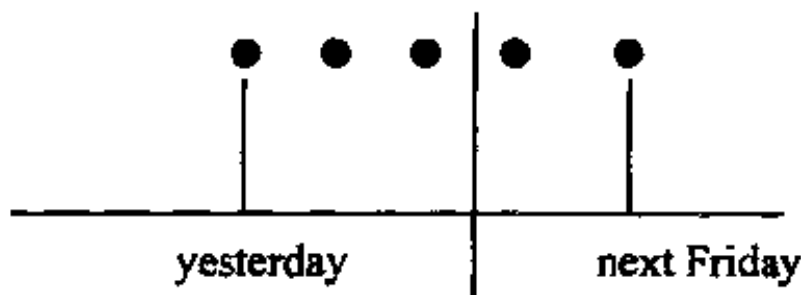
第三节 将来完成时态(will have done)

48. 将来完成动作的开始时间

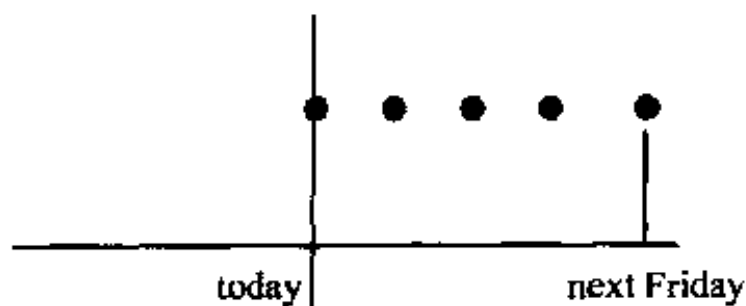
现在完成时,是以“现在”作为“坐标时间”,来描述开始于现在之前(即过去)的动作持续到现在。过去完成时,是以“过去”作为“坐标时间”,来描述开始于过去之前(即过去的过去)的动作持续到过去。同理,将来完成时,是以“将来”作为“坐标时间”,来表示开始于将来之前(可能是过去、现在或将来)的动作持续到将来。注意,这里说动作开始于“将来之前”,意味着动作开始的时间可能是:a)过去某一时刻;b)可能是现在某一时刻;或者也可能是;c)将来某一时刻。但动作开始的时间并不重要,关键是说话人要站在将来的某一时间来谈某一动作的完成情况。例如:

We *will have taken* five exams by next Friday. 到下个星期五之前,我们将完成五门考试。

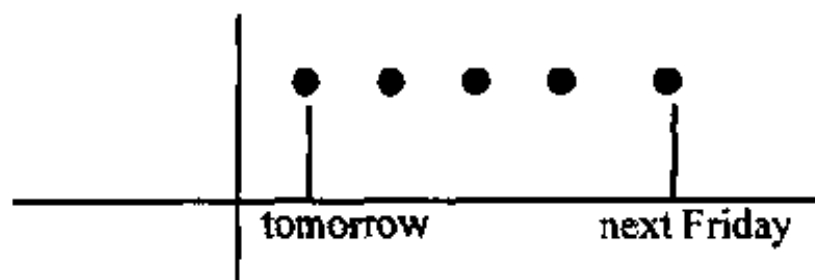
- a. 我们可能是昨天开始考试的: We started our exam yesterday and we *will have taken* five exams by next Friday.



- b. 可能是今天开始考试的: We have started our exam today and we *will have taken* five exams by next Friday.



- c. 也可能是明天才开始考试: We will start our exam tomorrow and we *will have taken* five exams by next Friday.



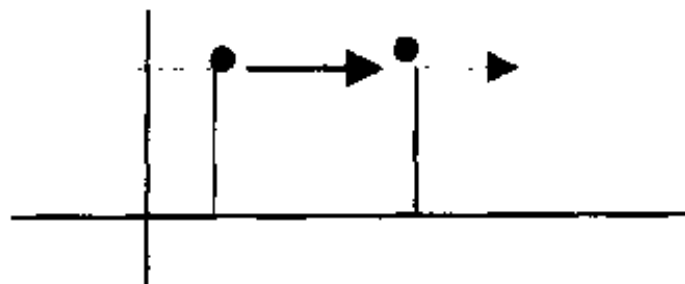
但具体哪一天开始的并不重要, 说话人强调的是他们一共有五门考试。

49. 将来完成时

同前面其他完成时态一样, 将来完成时态基本有三种用法。

► 1. 如同现在完成时的第一种用法的将来完成时。

图解:



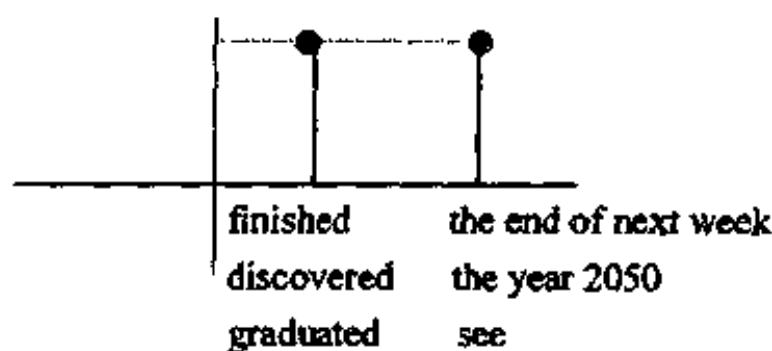
(虚线表示这一动作可能开始于现在或过去; 虚箭头表示这一动作可能继续延续下去。)

请看例句:

- a. I *will have taught* English in New Oriental School for five years by the end of next month.
- b. I *will have learned* 8000 words by the end of next year.
- c. I *will have waited* for her for two hours when she arrives at 2 o'clock this afternoon.
- d. The old man *will have worked* in this factory for 50 years when he retires next month.

► 2. 如同现在完成时的第二种用法的将来完成时。

图解:



(虚线表示这一动作对将来有影响。)

请看例句:

- a. We *will have finished* our exam by the end of next week.
- b. By the year 2050, scientists probably *will have discovered* a cure for cancer.
- c. I will graduate in July. I will see you in September. By the time I see you, I *will have graduated*.
- d. I *will have finished* my homework by the time I go out on a date tonight.

e. The construction company *will have completed* the stadium by the end of next July, when the Olympic Games is to be held here.

f. —May I speak to your manager Mr. Williams at eight tonight?

—I am sorry. Mr. Williams _____ to a conference long before then.

- A. will have gone
- B. had gone
- C. would have gone
- D. has gone

正确答案: A

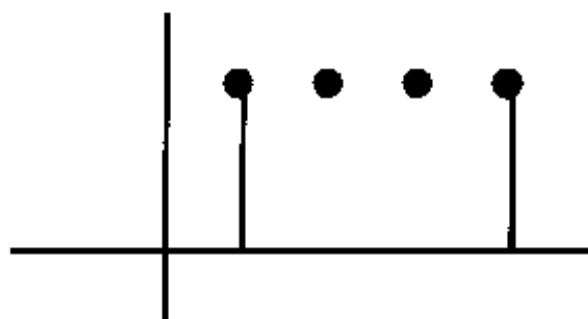
g. I hope you _____ all the material before you make the final decision.

- A. will have read
- B. will be read
- C. will be reading
- D. would have read

正确答案: A

► 3. 在将来之前开始的动作, 在将来之前的一段时间内重复发生。如同现在完成时的第三种用法。

图解:



请看例句:

- a. By five o'clock this afternoon the spaceship *will have traveled* eleven times round the world.

温故知新: In Brief

对于完成时态, 首先应该真正理解现在完成时态的三种思维用法:

1. 延续到现在的动作或状态;
2. 过去发生但与现在仍有联系的动作或状态;
3. 到目前为止的一个时间段内重复发生的动作。

其他两种完成时态在思维上与现在完成时本质上是一样的, 区别只是人们说话的立足时间不同。另外要注意比较不同用法的完成时态和不同的时间状语的搭配。

在下一章我们将会讨论和完成时态密切相关的另一时态——完成进行时态。

第五章 完成时态的练习

5.1 用适当的时态填空

1. I began to teach in New Oriental School in 1997. This year is 2001. So far I _____ (teach) here for 4 years. By 2000, I _____ (teach) for 3 years. By 2002, I _____ (teach) for 5 years.
2. Don't spend your money like water. If you keep on like this, you _____ (spend) all your money before the end of the trip.
3. "Was Clint at the party when you arrived?" "No, he _____ (already, go) home."
4. "Was Clint at the party when you arrived?" "Yes, but he _____ (go) home soon afterwards."
5. I felt very tired when I got home, so I _____ (go) straight to bed.
6. The house was very quiet when I got home. Everybody _____ (go) to bed.
7. Sorry I'm late. The car _____ (break) down on my way here.
8. We _____ (drive) along the road when we saw a car that _____ (break) down, so we stopped to see if we could help.
9. Yesterday I had a phone call from Clint. I was very surprised. I _____ (write) to him many times but he _____ (never, reply) to my letters.
10. I met Clint a few days ago. He _____ (just, come) back

from holiday. He looked very well.

11. The man sitting next to me on the plane was very nervous. It was his first flight. He _____ (never, fly) before.
12. This traffic is terrible. We're going to be late. By the time we _____ (get) to the airport, Bob's plane _____ (arrive, already), and he'll be wondering where we are.
13. Last spring I went to France. It was the first time that I _____ (be) there.
14. This is the only novel that he _____ (write).
15. This is the first time that I _____ (take) the flight.
16. This is the most difficult job that I _____ (ever, do).
17. Clint is phoning his girlfriend again. This is the fourth time that he _____ (phone) her this evening.
18. A: Look! Somebody _____ (spill) milk on the carpet.
B: Well, it _____ (be, not) me. I _____ (do, not) it.
A: I wonder who it _____ (be) then.
19. A: Clint _____ (break) his leg.
B: Really? How _____ that _____ (happen)?
A: He _____ (fall) off a ladder.
20. I _____ (lose) my key. I can't get into my house.
21. I _____ (lose) my key, so I couldn't get into my house. But now I _____ (find) it.

5.2 改错:

22. I have entered the university for two years.
23. He has come here for three hours.
24. The old lady has died for ten years.
25. He has left his native place for three years.

26. I have married for one year.
27. He has joined in the army for five years.
28. I have come to Beijing for seven years.

5.3 用正确时态填空，在合适的地方填入 **just**, **already**, **yet**, **before** 等。

29. A man sitting next to you on a flight seems very nervous but feels very excited. You can ask: _____? (take a flight)
30. Jack is skiing from the top of the mountain. He doesn't look very confident. You can ask: _____? (ski from the top of the mountain.)
31. After lunch you go to see a friend at her house. She says "Would you like something to eat?" you say: No, thank you. _____. (have lunch)
32. You know that a friend of yours is looking for a job. Perhaps he has been successful. Ask him: _____? (find a job)
33. You are eating in a restaurant. The waiter thinks you have finished and starts to take your plate away. You say: Wait a minute! _____. (not/finish)
34. John goes out. Five minutes later, the phone rings and the caller says "Can I speak to John?" You say: I am afraid _____. (go out)

5.4 讨论下列完成时态是什么思维和用法。

35. Mary: How long *have you been married*?
Lisa: This time—or altogether?
36. A Perfect Record

Teacher: Young man, you *haven't handed* in one home-work assignment since we started this class. Won't you please do tonight's assignment?

George: What? And ruin a perfect record?

37. I Don't Know

Lucy: Do you believe kissing is unhealthy?

Lily: I couldn't say—I've never....

Lucy: You *have never been kissed*?

Lily: I *ve never been sick*.

38. Will He Lose His Job?

First Clerk: Poor old Watkins *has completely lost* his hearing. I'm afraid he'll lose his job.

Second Clerk: Nonsense. He's to be transferred to the Complaint Department.

39. A total of 36832 fires in China *have killed* 971 people during the first quarter of the year, injuring 1228 and causing 310 million yuan in direct economic losses, a source with the statistics said.

40. Former Japanese Prime Minister Keizo Obuchi, who *had been* in a coma (昏迷) for six weeks, *died* of a cerebral (大脑的) infarction (梗塞) at a Tokyo hospital. 日本前首相小渊惠三, 在长达六星期的昏迷后, 因闹梗塞死于东京一家医院。

41. It's reported that by the end of this month the output of cement in the factory *will have risen* by about 10%.

42. —May I speak to your manager Mr. Williams at eight tonight?

——I am sorry. Mr. Williams *will have gone* to a conference long before then.

第五章 完成时态的练习答案

5.1 用适当的时态填空

1. have taught, had taught, will have taught
2. will have spent
3. had already gone
4. went
5. went
6. had gone
7. broke
8. were driving, had broken
9. had written, had never replied
10. had just come
11. had never flown
12. get, will already have arrived
13. had been
14. has written
15. have taken
16. have ever done
17. has phoned
18. has spilt, wasn't, didn't do, was
19. has broken, did...happen, fell
20. have lost
21. lost, have found

5.2 改错:

22. I have been in the university for two years. I entered the

university two years ago.

23. He has been here for three hours.

24. The old lady has been dead for ten years.

25. He has been away from his native place for three years.

26. I have been married for one year.

27. He has been in the army for five years.

28. I have been in Beijing for seven years.

5.3 用正确时态填空, 在合适的地方填入 just, already, yet, before 等。

29. Have you taken a flight before?

30. Have you skied from the top of the mountain before?

31. I've already had lunch.

32. Have you found a job yet?

33. I haven't finished yet.

34. I am afraid he has gone out.

5.4 讨论下列完成时态是什么思维和用法。

35. 延续状态

36. 一次动作的否定

37. 一次动作的否定

38. 一次性动作

39. 重复动作

40. 延续动作

41. 一次性动作

42. 一次性动作

时态(二): 完成进行时


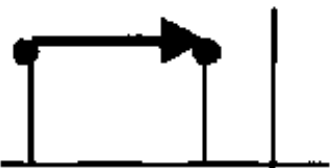
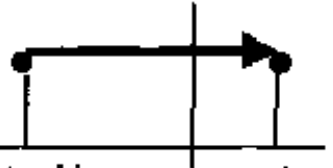
完成进行动作

- 现在完成进行 (have /has been doing)
- 过去完成进行 (had been doing)
- 将来完成进行 (will have been doing)

50. 完成进行时态概述

形式: have been doing

意义: 具有完成和进行两方面的特点; 表示一个动作在现在、过去或将来的某一活动或时间之前的一段时间里一直在进行, 强调动作的持续性。

时态与用法	图解	例句	解释
现在完成进行时 在现在之前的一段时间里一直在持续的动作。	 <p>raining right now</p> <p>(图中黑点表示两个不同的时刻; 黑箭头表示动作在持续。)</p>	i. It <i>has been raining</i> all day. It is still raining right now.	raining 是在现在 right now 之前的一段时间里 (all day) 一直在持续的动作。
过去完成进行时 在过去的某一活动或时间之前的一段时间里一直在持续的动作。	 <p>waiting turned up</p> <p>(图中黑点表示两个不同的时刻; 黑箭头表示动作在持续。)</p>	i. I <i>had been waiting</i> for her for two hours when she finally <i>turned up</i> .	turned up 是过去的一个活动, waiting 则是在 turned up 之前的一段时间里 (two hours) 一直在持续的动作。
将来完成进行时 在将来的某一活动或时间之前的一段时间里一直在持续的动作。这个动作开始的时间可能是过去。	 <p>teaching retire</p> <p>(图中黑点表示两个不同的时刻; 黑箭头表示动作在持续。)</p>	i. Professor Smith <i>will have been teaching</i> for 50 years when he <i>retires</i> next month.	retire 是将来的一活动, teaching 则是在 retire 之前的一段时间里 (50 years) 一直在持续的动作。

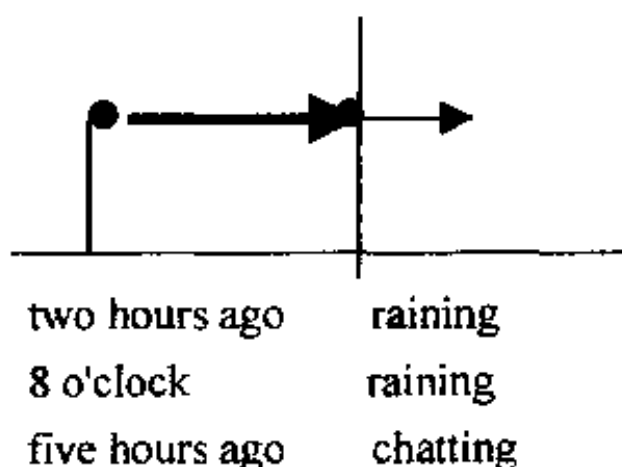
第一节 现在完成进行 (have/has been doing)

51. 完成进行用法(一): 到现在仍然在延续的动作

► 1. 与一段时间连用

强调动作的持续性, 表示开始于过去的动作持续到现在, 并且活动还没有结束, 还将继续持续下去(注意: 现在完成时则表示“动作可能只延续到说话时为止”)。此时的完成进行时常与 for + 时间段、since + 时间点、all morning、all day、all week 这样的表示一段时间的时间状语连用, 以强调在这一期间, 某项活动正在持续。

图解:



(图中黑点表示现在和过去两个时刻; 黑箭头表示动作在一直持续; 细箭头表示该动作还将继续持续下去。)

请看例句:

a. It began raining two hours ago and it's still raining. It

has been raining for two hours.

- b. It began raining at 8 o'clock. Now it's still raining. It *has been raining* since 8 o'clock. It *has been raining* all day.
- c. It *has been snowing* all day. I wonder when it will stop.
- d. Clint is chatting on OICQ now. He *has been chatting* on OICQ for five straight hours. He must be tired.
- e. These pop fans *have been waiting* for the famous singer for nearly three hours in the cold, but he still hasn't shown up.

► 2. 可以不与一段时间连用

上述例句均含有“一段时间”的时间状语,表示到说话时刻动作仍在持续。现在完成进行时还可以不带具体的表示一段时间的时间状语。此时它一般表示最近一段时期内正在持续的一般性活动。(这与现在进行时态表示一般性活动的用法类似。)

请看例句:

- a. I *have been thinking* about changing my job. 我最近一直在考虑换工作。
- b. I *have been thinking* about what you said and I've decided to take your advice. 我一直思考你说过的话,我已决定听从你的建议。
- c. All the students *have been studying* hard, for final exams will start next week. 学生们都在用功学习,因为下星期就要期末考试了。

52. 与现在完成时比较(一)

上述现在完成进行时的用法和现在完成时的第一种用法(参

见第 40 点)非常接近。二者之间有相同点,也有不同点。

► 1. 相同点:

1) 谓语动作都是表示延续性的。如: live, learn, study, sleep, snow, wait, work, teach, stay 等等。

2) 都与“一段时间”连用。

这时,用两种时态几乎没有多大区别。例如:

a. I **have been learning**/**have learned** English for ten years. 我学习英文有十年了。

b. I **have been living**/**have lived** here since 3 years ago.
自从三年前开始,我就一直住在这里。

c. He **has been sleeping**/**has slept** for three hours.

d. I **have been working**/**have worked** in this company for 3 years.

e. It **has been snowing**/**has snowed** for a long time.

► 2. 不同点:

即使此时两种时态所表达的意思相同,但现在完成时只有与 for three years、since three years ago 等这样的表示一段时间的**时间状语连用才能表示这类动作**。没有这样的时间状语,用现在完成时指的是一个完成了的动作。例如:

a. I **have worked**/**have been working** in this company for 3 years.

b. I **have worked** in this company. 我在这家公司工作过。
(现在不在了,表示过去的经历)

c. I **have been working** in this company. 我一直就在这家公司工作。(现在还在这家公司。)

d. He **has been sleeping**/**has slept** for three hours. (他已睡了

3 小时。也可能还继续睡。)

e. He *has slept*. (他睡过了, 所以现在不困了。)

f. He *has been sleeping*. (他一直在睡觉, 现在还在睡。)

g. “*Have you ever worked* in a foreign-funded company?”

“No, never.” (“你在外企工作过吗?” “从来没有。”问过去的经历, 动作已结束。)

h. You look tired. *Have you been working* hard? (你看起来很累, 工作一直很辛苦吧? 问是否一直是这样辛苦。)

从上面 c, f, h 三句, 我们看出, 现在完成进行时既可与一段时间状语连用, 也可不连用, 同样可表达“一直在持续的动作”这一含义。

53. 与现在完成时比较(二)

► 完成进行时强调动作过程, 完成时强调动作的结果。

现在完成进行时所强调的是在一段时期内某项活动的持续性, 因此强调的是动作本身。现在完成时则是强调动作的结果, 而不是动作本身。

a. My hands are very dirty. I' *ve been painting* the house.

我的手很脏, 我一直在给房子刷漆。

b. I *have painted* the house green. The house was white, but now it's green. 我把房子刷成了绿色。

c. Sorry about the mess—I' *ve been painting* the house.

painting 活动还没有结束, 房子还没有收拾, 所以屋子很乱。

d. I' *ve painted* two rooms since lunchtime.

painted 的结果是“两间房子都已粉刷完毕”。

e. I *have been reading* your grammar book. After I finish it, I'll discuss some problems with you.

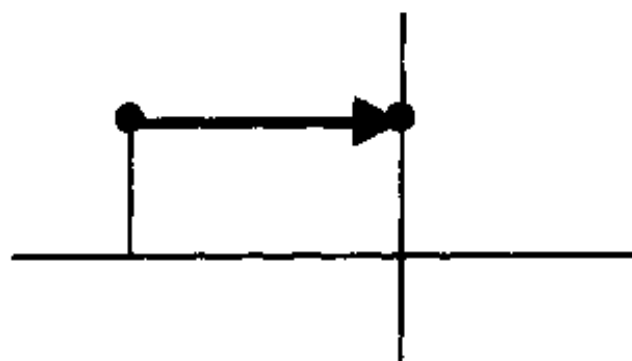
- f. I **have read** your grammar book and I have questions to ask you.
- g. I **have been reading** the book you lent me but I haven't finished it yet.
- h. I **have read** the book you lent me, so you can have it back now.
- i. — Oh, I **have been sitting** in the same position too long. My legs **have fallen** asleep. (噢, 一个姿势我坐得太久了, 我两条腿都麻木了。)
— Shake it a little before you get up. (站起来之前, 你先把腿甩甩。)

从这一句我们可看出: 由于长时间持续地 sit, 即 have been sitting, 造成的结果是“腿 have fallen asleep”。因此, 完成进行时表示活动的延续性; 完成时强调动作的结果。

54. 完成进行用法(二): 刚刚结束的动作

表示开始于过去的动作持续到现在为止不再继续或表示不久前刚刚结束的动作。

图解:



(图中黑点表示现在和过去两个时刻; 黑箭头表示动作在一直持续; 该动作到现在时刻即告终止。)

请看例句:

► 1. 动作持续到说话时为止:

- a. I'm trying to study. I've *been trying* to study for the last hour, but something always seems to interrupt me. I think I'd better go to the library.
- b. Where have you been? I've *been looking* for you for the last half hour. 你去哪里? 我一直找了你半个小时。(不再持续)
- c. You have just arrived to meet a friend who is waiting for you. You ask, "*Have you been waiting* long?"
- d. I'm so sorry I'm late. *Have you been waiting* long?
- e. Thank you so much for the binoculars. I've *been wanting* a pair for ages. 非常感谢你送我这副望远镜, 我一直想要一副。

► 2. 不久前刚刚结束的动作:(这是完成时没有的用法)

- a. Your friend is out of breath. You ask, "*Have you been running?*" 你刚才是不是一直在跑步?
- b. Why are your clothes so dirty? What *have you been doing?*
- c. The little boy is dirty from head to foot because he *has been playing* in the mud.
- d. You meet a friend in the street, whose face and hands are very dirty. You ask, "What *have you been doing?*"

55. 完成进行用法(三): 重复发生的动作

现在完成进行时可表示重复发生的动作。具体来说, 就是表

示说话时刻以前的一段时间内重复发生的动作。

- a. Every Sunday they meet in the same bar. They' *ve been going* there for years.
- b. Over the past few years, many towns in the United States *have been joining* with neighboring communities to share the costs of government. (96-1-29) 在近几年中, 美国许多城镇不断合并, 以降低政府费用开支。
- c. We' *ve been writing* to each other for years. (Years ago we started writing to a pen pal. We still write to each other regularly now.) 我们互相通信有多年了。
- d. I' *ve been getting* up early since I entered the college. 自从上大学以来, 我一直坚持早起。
- e. The price *has been going* up recently. I wonder whether it will remain so. 最近物价一直看涨, 不知是否会一直这样。
- f. You' *ve been staying* up late again? 最近又在熬夜?
- g. Koreans *have been marrying* U.S. soldiers stationed here since the 1950s. The peak years were during the 1970s, when more than 4,000 koreans married U.S. soldiers each year. 自 50 年代以来, 就不断有韩国人与当地的美国驻军成婚, 70 年代达到了高峰, 每年有 4000 多人嫁给美国大兵。

56. 与现在完成时比较(三)

► 1. 用短暂动词的完成进行时表示重复

在第 42 节讲过, 短暂动词的完成时不能与“一段时间”的时间状语连用, 但是短暂动词的完成进行时可与“一段时间”的时间状语连用, 这时表示重复动作。如上述例句:

- a. Every Sunday they meet in the same bar. They' *ve been going* there for years.
不能说:
- b. Every Sunday they meet in the same bar. They' *ve gone* there for years. *
- c. Over the past few years, many towns in the United States *have been joining* with neighboring communities to share the costs of government. (96 - 1 - 29) 在近几年中, 美国许多城镇不断合并, 以降低政府费用开支。
不能说:
- d. Over the past few years, many towns in the United States *have joined* with neighboring communities... *
- e. I' *ve been getting* up early since I entered the college. 自从上大学以来, 我一直坚持早起。
不能说:
- f. I' *ve got up* early since I entered the college. *

► 2. 重复动作的分割性

现在完成进行时强调动作的持续性, 因此它是表示一种看起来不间断的动作。如果要表达做一件事的次数(即把动作分割为一次一次的动作), 或一共做了多少件事情时, 则不能用现在完成进行时。请比较:

- a. I *have been sitting* in class since 8 o'clock this morning.
从早上8点钟到现在我一直在上课。
- b. I *have had three* classes since 8 o'clock this morning. 从早上8点钟到现在我上了三门课。
- c. It *has been snowing* all day, I wonder when it will stop.
下了一整天的雪, 不知什么时候能停。

- d. We **have had three** major snowstorms so far this winter. I wonder how many more we will have. 今年冬天已经下了三场大雪了，不知还会不会再下雪。
- e. The phone **has been ringing** for almost a minute. Why doesn't someone answer it?
- f. The phone **has rung four** times this morning, and each time it has been for Clint.
- g. I **'ve been writing** the letter this morning and won't finish until noon.
- h. I **'ve written three** letters so far this morning.
- i. I **'ve written** them **three times**, but I still haven't received a reply.
- j. I **'ve been chatting** (完成进行表示重复动作，没有说明具体聊天次数) online for a little over three years and **have met** (完成时表示重复，这里动作已被分割，因为下文提到了 hundreds of people) hundreds of people. One common thing of those who **have met** (动作同样被分割，所以用完成时表示重复) others in real life is: "Don't base the rest of your life on a week or two", meaning don't spend a week or two with your online lover, then move in with them and get married. 我泡在网上和人瞎聊天已经有三年多了，也遇到了很多人。那些已经和生活中的真人见过面的人总要说：“别因为一两个星期的感情就送上你一辈子。”就是说，别仅仅和你的网上情人相恋一两个星期就谈婚论嫁。

57. 与现在完成时比较 (四)

不能用于进行时态的动词，同样不能用于现在完成进行时。

a. How long *have you known* Jane?

b. How long *have you been knowing* Jane? *

解释: 像 know 这样的表示心理活动的动词是没有进行时态的。

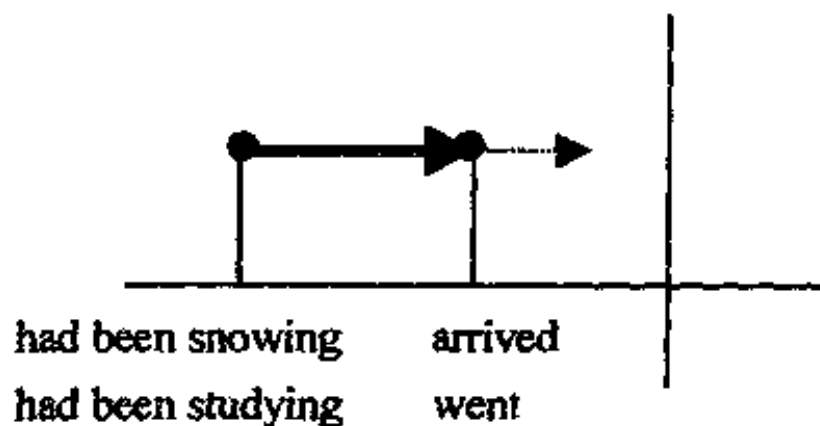
第二节 过去完成进行时

58. 过去完成进行时(had been doing)

过去完成进行时与过去完成时之间的关系, 同现在完成进行时与现在完成时之间的关系一样。它的用法与现在完成进行时基本相同, 只是将“坐标时间”移到过去。同样是强调动作的持续性, 表示开始于过去某个时刻之前的动作持续到过去这一时刻, 并继续持续下去。

- 1. 强调在过去的某一活动或时间之前一直在持续的一项活动。可能仍然持续下去。

图解:

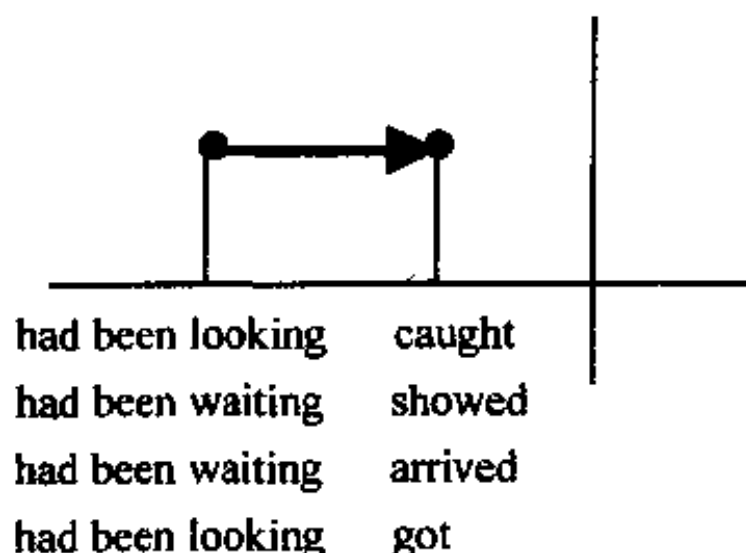


请看例句：

- a. When I *arrived* in Inner Mongolia, it *had been snowing* for half a month.
- b. She *had been studying* French for one year before she *went* to France.

- 2. 强调在过去的某一活动或时间之前一直在持续的一项活动。持续到过去这一活动或这一时间为止，或者是在过去这一时间之前刚刚结束。

图解：



请看例句：

- a. The police *had been looking* for the murderer for two years before they *caught* him.
- b. He finally *showed* up at nine o'clock. I *had been waiting* for him since six o'clock.
- c. When she *arrived*, I *had been waiting* in the cold for three hours.
- d. I *had been looking* for jobs for nearly half a year before I

finally *got* a position in this dot-com company.

- e. When the boys came into the house, their clothes were dirty, their hair was untidy and one of them had a black eye. I knew they *had been fighting*.
- f. There was nobody in the room but there was a smell of cigarettes. Somebody *had been smoking* in the room.
- g. The plane, which *had been waiting* on the runway for hours, finally got clearance for take-off.

► 3. 过去完成进行时可表示重复发生的动作。具体来说, 就是表示过去某一活动或时间之前的一段时间内重复发生的动作。

- a. He *had been gambling* for two years before his wife found out.
- b. I *had been trying* to get her on the phone. Finally she gave me a call. (我当时一直试着打电话找她, 最后她给我打了个电话。)

同样, 这里的重复动作不能说出具体的次数。例如:

I *had tried five times* to get her on the phone before she finally gave me a call. 我曾打了五次电话去找她, 最后她终于给我回了电话。而不能说: I *had been trying five times*... *

第三节 将来完成进行时

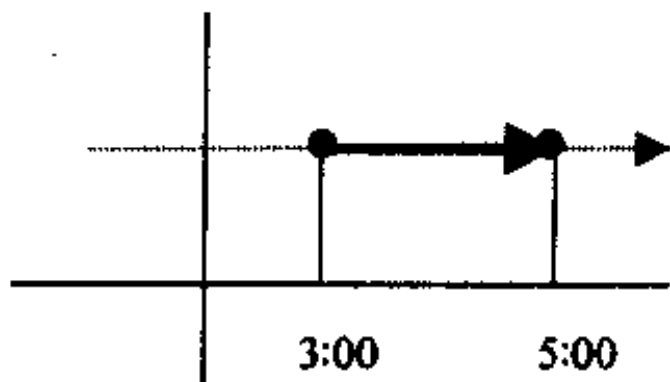
59. 将来完成进行时

将来完成进行时的用法与现在完成进行时基本相同, 只是将

“坐标时间”移到将来。同样是强调动作的持续性，表示开始于将来某个时刻之前的动作持续到将来这一时刻，并可能继续持续下去。

- 1. 强调在将来的某一活动或时间之前一直在持续的一项活动。

图解：



请看例句：

- a. My brother has promised to help me study for my exam tomorrow. I get home from school at 3:00 and he gets home from school at 5:00. I ***will have been studying*** for two hours by the time he gets home. (到 5:00, studying 活动仍将持续。)
- b. I'm retiring this fall. By then I' ll ***have been teaching*** for 30 years. (到今年秋天, teaching 活动不再持续。)
- c. She ***will have been taking*** care of her blind husband for 20 years by then. (taking 活动可能还会持续。)
- d. I'm getting tired of sitting in the car. Do you realize that by the time we arrive in Beijing, we ***will have been driving*** for twenty straight hours?

► 2. 表示在将来某个时间之前经常重复的动作。

- a. I *will have been attending* Professor Smith's lectures for half a year by next week.
- b. By tomorrow I *will have been doing* morning exercises for 100 days.
- c. The old man *will have been getting* up at 4:00 for ten years by next month. (到下个月, 这老头坚持早晨 4:00 起床就将长达 10 年的时间了。)

温故知新: In Brief

对于完成进行时态, 重点是理解现在完成进行时的三种用法:

- 1. 到现在仍在持续的动作;
- 2. 刚刚结束的动作;
- 3. 重复发生的动作。

同时我们还要注意现在完成进行时与现在完成时的用法区别。这在前文已有详细比较。

到此为止, 英文中的主要时态用法就介绍完毕, 这是动词作为谓语的变化形式。接下来, 我们将讨论动词作为非谓语的变化: 不定式、动名词。而分词作为一种非谓语形式, 由于用法很复杂, 我们将在“驾驭语法”一书中讨论。

第六章 完成进行时态的练习

6.1 用适当的时态填空：

1. This morning I came to class at 9:00. Right now it is 10:00, and I am still in class. I ____ (sit) at this desk for an hour. By 9:30, I ____ (sit) here for half an hour. By 11:00, I ____ (sit) here for two hours.
2. It is midnight. I ____ (study) for five straight hours. No wonder I'm getting tired.
3. It was midnight. I ____ (study) for five straight hours. No wonder I was getting tired.
4. Clint woke up in the middle of last night. He was frightened and didn't know where he was. He ____ (dream).
5. When I got home, I saw Clint was sitting in front of the TV. He had just turned it off. He ____ (watch) TV.
6. He finally showed up at nine o'clock. I ____ (wait) for him since six o'clock.
7. We were good friends. We ____ (know) each other for a long time.
8. When I arrived, my girlfriend was waiting for me. She was rather annoyed with me because I was late and she ____ (wait) for a very long time on such a windy day.
9. Yesterday I saw Leon sitting on the ground. He was out of breath. He ____ (run).
10. I ____ (write) 3 letters since lunchtime.
11. I ____ (write) letters since lunchtime and am still

writing now.

12. How long _____ you _____ (read) that book?
13. How many pages of that book _____ you _____ (read)?
14. The novel is so interesting. I _____ (read) for two hours and _____ (read) 55 pages so far.
15. I know Jane is saving money to go on holiday. I ask her, "How long _____ you _____ (save) money? How much money _____ you _____ (save)?"
16. I _____ (surf) online since 8 o'clock A. M. I am very tired now.
17. I _____ (surf) online five times this week.
18. I _____ (knock) at the door six times, but nobody answers it. I don't think anybody is in.
19. I _____ (knock) at the door for two minutes, but nobody answers it.
20. I _____ (read) the book you lent me but I haven't finished it yet.
21. I _____ (read) the book you lent me, so you can have it back now.

6.2 单项选择 (综合练习):

22. He _____ several novels since 1985. Most of them _____ quite successful, but the last one _____ very good reviews.
 A. has written/were/hasn't got
 B. wrote/have been/didn't get
 C. has written/have been/didn't get
 D. wrote/were/didn't get
23. By the time you get back, great changes _____ in this

- area.
- A. will take place
 - B. will be taken place
 - C. will be taking place
 - D. will have taken place
24. By the time you _____, I _____ all my housework.
- A. returned/will have finished
 - B. return/will finish
 - C. return/will have finished
 - D. returned/finished
25. When I _____ the letter, I _____ it to you.
- A. wrote/will show
 - B. wrote/would show
 - C. have written/will show
 - D. have written/would show
26. I _____ New York in 1986, but I _____ there since.
- A. visit/hadn't been
 - B. visited/haven't been
 - C. visit/haven't been
 - D. visited/hadn't been
27. I think by five o'clock the children _____ from their work.
- A. will return
 - B. had returned
 - C. will have returned
 - D. have returned
28. Someone _____ my book. I _____ for it for the last ten minutes, but I can't see it anywhere.
- A. took/have been looking

- B. has taken/am looking
C. took/was looking
D. has taken/have been looking
29. Just imagine, if all goes well, by Christmas we _____ in the new house for almost two months.
A. are living
B. have lived
C. will live
D. will have been living
30. I hope you _____ all the possibilities before you make the final decision.
A. are considered
B. will be considering
C. will have considered
D. would have considered
31. I _____ to visit them yesterday, but someone came to see me just when I was about to leave.
A. planned
B. had planned
C. did plan
D. was planning
32. John and I _____ neighbors since we _____ children.
A. are/were
B. were/have been
C. have been/are
D. have been/were
33. The plumber _____ here yet? Yes, but he only _____ for thirty minutes.
A. has been/has stayed

- B. was/has stayed
C. has been/stayed
D. was/stayed
34. Many years ago, he _____ in Paris with his uncle for a long period of time.
A. had been living
B. had lived
C. lived
D. has been living
35. How long _____ here? I _____ you come in.
A. do you sit/haven't seen
B. did you sit/did not see
C. have you sat/have not seen
D. have you been sitting/did not see
36. I _____ a great deal _____ I came to England.
A. have learned/before
B. have learned/since
C. learned/since
D. learn/after
37. I _____ there five minutes when all the lights _____ out.
A. was/went
B. had been/went
C. have been/go
D. have been/went
38. I _____ this crossword puzzle for the last hour, but I _____ half of it yet.
A. am doing/haven't finished
B. have been doing/haven't finished

- C. did/didn't finish
D. had done/didn't finish
39. Great as Newton was, many of his ideas _ _ _ today and are being modified by the work of scientists of our time. (97.1 CET - 4)
A. are to challenge
B. may be challenged
C. are challenging
D. have been challenged
40. It's reported that by the end of this month the output of cement in the factory _ _ _ by about 10%. (96.1 CET - 4)
A. will have risen
B. has risen
C. will be rising
D. has been rising
41. That was the first time the old lady _ _ _ her suffering to others.
A. was telling
B. had told
C. have told
D. told
42. She will come to call on the moment she _ _ _ her work.
A. has finished
B. had finished
C. finishes
D. will finish
43. I _ _ _ to call on you, but was prevented from doing

- so.
- A. mean
 - B. have meant
 - C. meant
 - D. had meant
44. The Olympic Games, first celebrated in Athens in 1896, _____ every four years so far this century, except during the two world wars.
- A. are held
 - B. were held
 - C. had been held
 - D. have been held
45. It's the third time I _____ this particular aspect of grammar.
- A. explain
 - B. explained
 - C. have explained
 - D. will explain
46. On her next anniversary she _____ married for 25 years.
- A. will be
 - B. will have been
 - C. has been
 - D. is being
47. In two years' time he _____ his master's degree in chemistry.
- A. has completed
 - B. will be completing
 - C. will have completed

- D. will have been completing
48. She ought to stop work; she has a headache because she _____ too long.
- A. has been reading
B. had read
C. is reading
D. read
49. It seems oil _____ from this pipe for some time, we'll have to take the machine apart to put it right. (97.6)
- A. had leaked
B. is leaking
C. leaked
D. has been leaking
50. _____ a rapid development in the application of laser over the last twenty year.
- A. There is
B. There will be
C. There has been
D. There had been
51. By the end of this term, David _____ Chinese for four years, but he will still need more training and experience before he masters the language.
- A. will be studying
B. has studied
C. will have been studying
D. has been studying
52. "I think the milkman sent us the wrong bottle." "It's likely. They _____ that many times before."
- A. do

- B. done
C. have done
D. are doing
53. By the year 2020, scientists probably _____ a cure for cancer.
A. have found
B. will have found
C. will be finding
D. are finding
54. I was lucky actually because that was the second time I _____ China that year.
A. have visited
B. visited
C. had visited
D. would visit
55. When the robber came in, carrying the sword, most of the passengers looked up in surprise, because they _____ anything like it before.
A. didn't see
B. have never seen
C. never saw
D. had never seen
56. If the population of the Earth goes on increasing at its present rate, by the middle of the 21st century, we _____ all the oil that drives our cars.
A. will use up
B. will have been using up
C. will have used up
D. have used up

57. "Let's hurry. The manager is coming." "Oh, I was afraid that we ____."
- A. already miss him
B. had already missed him
C. will miss him already
D. have already missed him
58. This is the first time that I _____ really relaxed for weeks.
- A. had felt
B. feel
C. have felt
D. shall feel
59. By the time the fire engine arrived, the house _____ to the ground.
- A. burned
B. had burned
C. has burned
D. should have burned
60. Ever since the painter's paintings went on exhibit, there _____ large crowds at the museum every day.
- A. is
B. has been
C. have been
D. are being
61. Until then, Jack's family _____ from him for more than a year.
- A. hadn't heard
B. hasn't heard
C. didn't hear

- D. hasn't been hearing
62. Pick me up at 6 o'clock. I ____ my bath by then
- A. may have
- B. can have had
- C. will be having
- D. will have had
63. By the time James _____ back from his holiday the milkman will have left twenty bottles of milk outside his doors.
- A. will get
- B. has got
- C. will be getting
- D. will have got
64. It is amazing that the Leaning Tower of Pisa ____ for so long.
- A. have stood
- B. stands
- C. has been standing
- D. should have stood

第六章 完成进行时态的练习答案

6.1 用适当的时态填空:

1. have been sitting, had been sitting, will have been sitting
2. have been studying
3. had been studying
4. had been dreaming
5. had been watching
6. had waited/had been waiting
7. had known
8. had been waiting/had waited
9. had been running
10. have written
11. have been writing
12. have...been reading
13. have...read
14. have been reading, have read
15. have been saving, have saved
16. have been surfing
17. have surfed
18. have knocked
19. have been knocking
20. have been reading
21. have read

6.2 单项选择 (综合练习):

22. C 23. D 24. C 25. C 26. B 27. C 28. D 29. D

30. C 31. B 32. D 33. C 34. C 35. D 36. B 37. B
 38. B 39. D 40. A 41. B 42. A 43. D 44. D 45. C
 46. B 47. C 48. A 49. D 50. C 51. C 52. C 53. B
 54. C 55. D 56. C 57. B 58. C 59. B 60. C 61. A
 62. D 63. B 64. C

动词不定式

第一节 不定式的语法功能 (一)

60. 作主语：“It + to do sth” 句型

► 1. “It + to do sth” 句型

不定式作主语，常见的是用 it 作形式主语，放在句首，将真正的主语动词不定式（短语）放在句子后面。

- a. *It is easier to spend money than to make money.*
- b. *It takes time to study English well.*

注意：此处形式主语 it 不能用 this 或 that 来替换。

This is impossible for people to stare directly at the sun. 人

A B A

们不可能直视太阳。

答案：A. This 改为 It

► 2. 不定式结构也可直接置于句首作主语，此时谓语动词要用单数。

- a. *To err* is human; to forgive, divine. 犯错人皆难免，宽恕则属超凡。
- b. *To solve this problem* takes a genius like Einstein.
- c. *To love for the sake of being loved* is human, but *to love for the sake of loving* is angelic.
- d. *To send a letter* is a good way to go somewhere without moving anything but your heart.

61. 作宾语：动词 + to do

► 1. 直接跟在一个及物动词后面作宾语。这时句子有以下两个特点：

第一，句子主语和不定式的逻辑主语是一致的，即两个动词所表示的动作都是由全句主语发出。

第二，这时句子的谓语动词多是描写态度；不定式的动词则说明行为。

- a. I *hope* to see you again.
- b. This company *refused* to cooperate with us.
- c. He *promised* not to tell anyone about it.

英语中常接动词不定式作宾语的动词有：agree, appear, beg, begin, dare, decide, expect, fail, forget, happen, hate, hesitate, hope, intend, like, love, manage, mean, prefer, prepare, pretend, promise, propose, refuse, regret, remember, seem, start, swear, try, want, wish, etc.

- 2. 在一些动词之后，可以在连接代词 (what, who, which) 或连接副词 (how, when, where) 及连词 whether 后面接一个带 to 的动词不定式。我们可以将这种结构看成是连接词引导的宾语从句的简略形式。

- a. I wonder *who to invite*. (= who I should invite)
- b. Show us *what to do*. (= what we must do)
- c. I don't know *whether to answer* his letter. (= whether I should answer)

类似动词还有：ask, consider, decide, discover, explain, forget, find out, guess, imagine, know, learn, observe, remember, see, tell, teach, think, understand, wonder, etc.

62. 作宾语补足语：动词 + sb to do sth

- 1. 通常的结构是：动词 + sb to do sth

- a. They don't allow people *to smoke* in the theater.
- b. The chairman declared the meeting *to be over*.
- c. Allow me *to drink* to your success. 让我为你的成功干杯！
- d. Allow me *to propose* a toast to our friendship! 我提议为我们的友谊干杯！

能用于此结构中的动词有：advise, allow, ask, beg, cause, encourage, expect, forbid, force, get, help, like, order, permit, persuade, remind, teach, tell, want, warn, wish(hope 不可) etc.

- 2. 在 let, make, have, see, hear, feel, watch, notice, listen to 等动词后面，不定式作宾语补足语时，to 要省略，改为被动语态，则须带 to。(详见本章“第四节”)

63. 作定语: 名词 + to do sth

► 1. 动宾关系:

即所修饰的名词在逻辑上作不定式的宾语。

- a. She has four *children* to *take care of*.
- b. I had no *place* to *live in*.
- c. You just regard me as a thing, an object to look at, to use, to touch, but not to listen to or to take seriously. (你只把我当作一件东西, 一件任你看、任你用、任你抚摸的东西, 但就是不听我的话, 不认真对待我。)
- d. I gave the kid a comic to read.
- e. He needs a place to live in.
- f. I have no partner to speak English with.
- g. I need a pen to write with.
- h. I need a piece of paper to write on.

注意: 1) 不定式一般不用被动形式。

2) 不定式动词后不能再加宾语

- a. I gave the kid a comic to read *it*. *
- b. I need something to eat *it*. *

3) 不定式动词后介词不省略

- a. I have no partner to speak English. *
- b. I need a pen to write. *

► 2. 被 only, last, next, 序数词, 最高级形容词修饰的名词常用不定式作定语。(考试重点)

- a. I don't think he is the *best* man to do the job. 我认为他并不是做这工作的最好人选。

- b. The *next* train to arrive is from New York. 下一列到达的火车是从纽约开来的。
- c. Clint was the *second* person to fall into this trap. Clint 是第二个掉进陷阱的人。
- d. Clint was the *only* person to survive the air crash. Clint 是这次空难事故中惟一的幸存者。

6.4. 作独立成分

动词不定式可用作独立成分，用来修饰整个句子，常见的有：to begin with, to tell the truth, to make a long story short, so to speak, to be brief/exact/frank/honest, to say nothing of (姑且不说), to say the least (至少可以这么说)

以上所列短语均为口语中常用短语。请脱口而出！

- a. *To begin with*, on behalf of (代表) all of your American guests, I wish to thank you for the incomparable (无可比拟的) hospitality. 首先，我谨代表你们的所有美国客人向你们表示感谢，感谢你们无可比拟的盛情款待。(尼克松总统 1972 年访华时的祝酒词开篇)
- b. —You're in pretty lousy mood, huh?
—To say the least.
- c. I have a point there, to say the least.
- d. To make a long story short, he is in hospital now.

第二节 不定式的语法功能 (二) ——不定式作状语

动词不定式作状语，主要表示目的和结果。

65. 作目的状语

- a. Hating people is like burning down your own house *to get* rid of a rat. 憎恨别人，就好像为了赶走一只老鼠，而把自己的房子烧掉。
- b. *To avoid* criticism, do nothing, say nothing, be nothing.
- c. *To acquire* knowledge, one must study; but *to acquire* wisdom, one must observe.
- d. We had better start early *to catch* the train.
- e. I went to the post office *to mail* a letter.

我们可用 *in order to do* 或 *so as to do* 强调目的状语。

- a. We had better start early *so as to* catch the train.
- b. I went to the post office *in order to* mail a letter.
- c. I quote others *in order to better* express my own self.
(我引用别人的话，是为了更好地表达自己。)
- d. The teacher raised her voice *in order for us to* hear more clearly.

注意：so as to 一般不用在句首。但 *to do* 或 *in order to do* 可提到句首。

66. 作结果状语

► 1. 直接用在句中作结果状语

- a. He lived *to be* a hundred years.
- b. What have I done *to offend* you?
- c. He lived *to see* the second world war. (此句相当于 He lived until he saw World War II.)

► 2. never to do—结构表示结果

- a. John left his hometown ten years ago, *never to return*.
- b. We parted *never to see* each other.

► 3. only to do—引出意想不到或不愉快的结果(4、6级考试重点)

- a. We hurried to the railway station, *only to find* the train had just left. 我们匆匆忙忙赶到火车站,结果却发现火车刚刚离站。
- b. All too often, women complain that they're educated as equals, *only to go* out into the workforce to be treated as inferiors. 女人往往抱怨说,她们和男人们接受同样的教育,结果在职业场上却被认为低人一等。
- c. He worked very hard, _____ he had not finished half of the job.
A. to find
B. finding
C. just finding
D. only to find

正确答案:D

► 4. ...enough to

- a. He is not old enough to go to school. 他还没有到上学的年龄。
- b. The teacher speaks loudly enough to make himself heard clearly.

► 5. too...to 结构

这一结构我们常熟悉的意思是“太…以致不能…”，肯定形式，否定意思。

- a. The box is *too heavy for me to even move*. 这箱子太沉了，我挪动不了。
- b. The tea is *too hot to drink*.
- c. An Interesting Maid

Mistress: Be careful not to drop those china dishes.

Maid: Don't worry, madam. If they did fall they are *too light to hurt* my feet.

有趣的女仆

女主人：小心别把那些磁盘子打碎了。

女仆：别担心，夫人。即使它们掉下来，因为很轻，也不会砸伤我的脚。

第三节 不定式的语法功能（三） ——用在形容词后的不定式

67. 形容词后的不定式

► 1. 句子主语和不定式动词可构成逻辑上的主谓关系。

这一句型中的形容词通常表示人的性格特征或行为表现。如：brave, careful, careless, clever, considerate, cruel, foolish, generous, kind, modest, nice, polite, rude, selfish, silly, stupid, thoughtful 等。

- a. He was surprised to learn how much he had spent.

- b. The boy was careless to break the window.

► 2. 句子主语和不定式动词可构成逻辑上的动宾关系。

- a. *She* is interesting to *listen to*. 听她讲话很有趣。= It is interesting to *listen to her*.
 b. *Relativity theory* isn't easy to *understand*. = It isn't easy to understand relativity theory.
 c. *She* is very nice to *talk to*. = It is very nice to talk to her.
 d. *Mary* is easy to *get on with*. = It is easy to get on with Mary.
 e. *English* is difficult to *speak*.
 f. *Football* is very interesting to *watch*.
 g. *Barbara* is interesting to *listen to* because she reads a lot.

句子主语与不定式动词存在这种动宾关系的情况下，我们要注意以下三点：

1) 不定式动词一般不用被动式：(最容易出错)

- a. English is difficult to *be spoken*. *
 b. Football is interesting to *be watched*. *

2) 不定式后不能再加宾语：

- a. Football is very interesting to watch *it*. *
 b. She is nice to talk to *her*. *

3) 不定式动词所带的介词不能省略：

- a. She is interesting to *listen*. *

- b. She is easy *to get on*. *

第四节 不带 to 的不定式

在下列几种情况下不定式要省略 to:

68. 一些动词的复合宾语中 to 省去

- 1. 感觉动词 (perceptual verb): see, hear, watch, notice, feel, observe

- 2. 使役动词 (causative verb): let, make, have

- a. The teacher *has* us *write* a composition every week.
b. I *saw* a man *enter* the shop.
c. A man was scared to death when he went to the dentist with a toothache. To calm the patient, the dentist offered him a shot of whiskey. The man tossed it down (一饮而尽), then had another. "Now," said the dentist, "got your courage back?" "Yeah," snarled (咆哮) the patient. "And I'd like to *see* anybody *try* to touch my teeth." 一名男子因为牙痛去看牙医, 但他非常害怕。为使病人平静下来, 牙医给了他一杯威士忌。男子一饮而尽, 接着又喝了一杯。牙医说: "现在, 你不再害怕了吧?" 病人咆哮道: "是的, 我倒要看看谁敢再碰我的牙齿。"

上述动词若转换为被动结构时, 其后不定式需加 to.

- d. A man *was seen to enter* the shop.

69. 一些短语句型中 to 省去

had better, would rather, would sooner, would just as soon, might (just) as well, cannot but, cannot choose but, cannot help but, etc.

- a. I *cannot but admire* his courage.
- b. We *might as well put up* here for tonight.
- c. It all started so innocently that warm June night. When I first met you, you looked so beautiful and lovely that I *couldn't help but fall* in love with you, even though we both agreed our worlds were far apart, and could never be one.

70. Do nothing/anything/everything but do 句型中 to 省去

- a. I have nothing to do *but wait*.
- b. I have no choice *but to wait*. (若 but 前没有 do, 则不定式加 to)
- c. He needs nothing *but to succeed*.
- d. He will do anything *but give in*. (他决不会屈服)
还有在解释 do 的精确含义的名词从句和定语从句作主语的句子中, be 动词后直接加 do.
- e. All that I could do then *was wait*.
- f. What I could do then *was wait*.
- g. All you do now *is complete* this form.
- h. No mountains too high for you to climb. All you have to do

is have some climbing faith. No rivers too wide for you to make it across. All you have to do *is believe* it when you pray.

i. Husband: I have a very demanding job. I'm tired when I get home.

Wife: I also have a demanding job, but I'm expected to come home from the office and cook, care for the children and clean the house. All you do *is sit and watch* television and complain about how tired you are.

温故知新: In Brief

在三种非谓语动词变化中,不定式所能充当的句子成分最为复杂:能够充当除谓语之外的任何成分,这也是“不定式”(不一定是什词性)得名的由来。在《通悟语法》这本书里,我们比较全面地介绍了它作各种成分的用法。不定式作各种成分的更加深入的用法,以及不定式的时态和语态变化,我们将在《驾驭语法》一书里详细讨论。

第七章 不定式综合练习

7.1 用 it + to do 句型造句

1. 拥有一些亲密的朋友很重要。
2. 对别人要有礼貌, 这点很重要。
3. 学习别国语言和文化很有趣。
4. 学外语难吗?
5. 很难交到真心朋友。
6. 做人要诚实, 这很重要。
7. 鱼儿离开水不可能存活。
8. 学生学英文有必要多练习。
9. 老师应该对学生们要有耐心。
10. 人们不可能直视太阳。

7.2 用括号中动词的适当形式填空

11. The boy was made _____ (sing) the song once again.
12. Don't make children _____ (work) too hard.
13. They would rather _____ (die) than _____ (surrender).
14. He could not choose but _____ (love) her.
15. She could do nothing but _____ (change) her name under the circumstances.
16. He had his son _____ (play) the violin three hours a day.
17. There was nothing to do except _____ (escape) .
18. He has not alternative but _____ (go) and ask his sister for help.
19. A: What can you see in a park?

B: I can see birds _ _ _ (fly) in the sky and sometimes
I can see people _ _ _ _ _ (do) shadowboxing.

A: Do you hear anything in the park?

B: Yes, I can hear people _ _ _ _ _ (chat) here and there
and sometimes I can hear young people _ _ _ _ _
(speak) English at the English corner.

7.3 单项选择 (综合练习):

20. I couldn't do anything but _ _ _ _ _ there and hope.
A. just sit
B. just sitting
C. just to sit
D. just to sitting
21. After twenty years abroad, William came back only
_ _ _ _ _ his hometown severely damaged in an earth-
quake.
A. finding
B. to find
C. was finding
D. was to find
22. He came all the way to help her _ _ _ _ _ that she drowned
herself in a well.
A. only to find
B. to find
C. in order to find
D. so as to find
23. Caught in the act, he had no alternative but _ _ _ _ _
A. confess
B. confessing

- C. confessed
D. to confess
24. The girl tried many times to sneak across the border to a neighboring country, _____ each time.
A. having been caught
B. always being caught
C. had been caught
D. only to be caught
25. He couldn't help _____ after he heard the news.
A. bursting into tears
B. burst into tears
C. bursting out tears
D. burst out crying
26. She _____ admit that they were justified in this.
A. could help not
B. could not but
C. could but not
D. could not help
27. They would sooner _____ for a drink.
A. going
B. to go
C. go
D. not to go
28. Sometimes _____ to place physics and chemistry into separate categories.
A. that is difficult
B. is difficult
C. it is difficult
D. that it is difficult

29. They forbade _____ to the park.
 A. him to go
 B. him going
 C. he should go
 D. he went
30. The parents scolded the child and made her promise _____ again.
 A. never to do that
 B. what to do never
 C. that never to do that
 D. so never to do that
31. The child may be able to attain his immediate goal _____ that his method brings criticism from people who observe him.
 A. only to find
 B. only find
 C. only finding
 D. only have found
32. The total influence of literature upon the course of human history _____.
 A. is difficult to evaluate
 B. is difficult to evaluate it
 C. difficult to evaluate it
 D. it is difficult to evaluate
33. The first explorer _____ California by land was Strong Smith, a trapper who crossed the southwestern deserts of the United States in 1826.
 A. that he reached
 B. to reach

- C. reached
D. reaching it
34. She could do nothing but _____ her name under the circumstances.
A. to change
B. changing
C. chang
D. to be changed
35. He had his son _____ the violin three hours a day.
A. to play
B. play
C. playing
D. played
36. There was nothing to do except _____.
A. to escape
B. escape
C. escaping
D. having escaped
37. He has no alternative but _____ and ask his sister for help.
A. to go
B. go
C. going
D. goes
38. I need a piece of paper to _____.
A. write on
B. write
C. be written
D. write with

39. He was the first _____ and the last _____.
- A. arriving...leaving
 - B. to arrive...to leave
 - C. arrive...leave
 - D. for arriving...for leaving
40. I'm not sure which restaurant _____.
- A. to eat on
 - B. to eat at
 - C. eating at
 - D. for eating
41. I have no place _____ and no food _____.
- A. to live...to eat
 - B. to live in...to eat
 - C. to live in...to eat at
 - D. living in...eating
42. The teacher doesn't allow _____ on the exam.
- A. his students to cheat
 - B. his students' cheating
 - C. to cheat
 - D. his students cheat
43. In 1938 Pearl S. Buck became the first American woman _____ the Nobel Prize for Literature.
- A. receive
 - B. received
 - C. to receive
 - D. she received
44. The teachers don't know _____ to start and run a school.
- A. what it takes

- B. what they take
- C. what does it take
- D. what takes

第七章 不定式综合练习答案

7.1 用 it + to do 句型造句

1. It's very important to have some close friends.
2. It's very important to be polite to others.
3. It's really interesting to study the language and culture of another country.
4. Is it hard to learn a foreign language?
5. It's hard to get real friends.
6. It's important to be honest.
7. It's impossible for fish to live without water.
8. It's necessary for students to do more exercise in learning English.
9. It's necessary for teachers to be patient with students.
10. It's impossible for people to stare directly at the sun.

7.2 用括号中动词的适当形式填空

11. to sing.
12. work
13. die, surrender
14. love
15. change.
16. play
17. escape.
18. to go
19. fly, do, chat, speak

7.3 单项选择 (综合练习):

20. A 21. B 22. A 23. D 24. D 25. A 26. B 27. C
28. C 29. A 30. A 31. A 32. A 33. B 34. C 35. B
36. B 37. A 38. A 39. B 40. B 41. B 42. A 43. C
44. A

动名词

第一节 动名词作主语

71. 用作主语

► 1. 直接将动名词放在句首作主语，谓语动词用单数。

- a. *Seeing* is believing.
- b. *Reading* is like permitting a man to talk a long time, and refusing you the right to answer.
- c. *Hating people* is like burning down your own house to get rid of a rat. 憎恨别人，就好像为了赶走一只老鼠，而把自己的房子烧掉。
- d. *Having a successful marriage* takes effort and patience, and communication is the key. 要获得成功的婚姻需要努力和耐心，而交流就是关键。

- e. *Going to the school dance* is a lot of fun. But sometimes, *deciding who to go with* isn't easy.

► 2. It is no good doing sth 句型。

这里, it 只是形式主语, 真正主语是 doing sth。其中, no good 可替换为: any/some good, any/some/no use, a waste of time 等。

- a. Is it any good trying to explain?
- b. It's no use crying over spilt milk.
- c. It's not much use my buying salmon if you don't like fish.
- d. It's simply a waste of time and money seeing that movie.

► 3. There be 句型中用动名词:

1) There is no point (in) doing something, “干某事没有必要, 没有意义”

- a. There is no point in my buying salmon if you don't like fish.
- b. There is no point in my going out to date someone, I might really like if I met him at the time, but who, right now, has no chance of being anything to me but a transitional man. 现在让我出去和别人拍拖没有用。如果我碰上了意中人, 我自然会爱上他的。可是在现在这个时候, 我跟谁也不会有结果的, 除非是为了解解闷而已。

2) There is no use/good (in) doing something, “干某事没有用”

- a. There is no use your arguing with him.

3) There is no doing something 意思相当于 It's impossible

to do something 或 We can't do something.

- a. There is no denying the fact that... 毋庸置疑……
- b. There is no gainsaying the fact that... 毋庸置疑……
- c. There is no telling what will happen tomorrow.
- d. There's no knowing the future. = It's impossible to know the future, or we can't know the future.

第二节 动名词作宾语

72. 一些动词后只能用动名词作宾语

appreciate, avoid, consider, delay, dislike, enjoy, escape, feel like, finish, can't help, involve, overlook, permit, postpone, practise, risk, can't stand, suggest, tolerate, understand 等。

- a. I will **overlook your being** so rude to my sister this time but don't let it happen again.
- b. Many of the things we do **involve taking** some risk in order to achieve a satisfactory result.
- c. Being a bad-tempered man, he would not **tolerate having** his lectures interrupted.

73. 接动名词和接动词不定式有区别的动词

在英语中有很多动词后接动名词和接动词不定式均可，但在意思上往往有很大的差别，现将这样的动词分类归纳整理如下：

- 1. 在 demand, deserve, need, require, want 等动词后面, 动名词主动形式表示被动的意思, 若改接动词不定式, 则必须用动词不定式的被动形式。

- a. The garden needs *watering/to be watered*. 不说: The garden needs *being watered*.
b. Your hair needs *cutting/to be cut*.

- 2. 与 remember, forget, stop, go on 和 regret 连用时, 动名词指发生于这些动词之前的事, 不定式表示发生在它们之后的事。

1) Remember

remember doing sth: *remember/recall something that happened in the past*. 记得已做过某事。

- a. I still remember being taken to Beijing for the first time.
b. I don't remember/recall locking my suitcase. = As far as I know, my suitcase should be open.

remember to do sth: *remember to perform a responsibility, duty or task* 记得需要履行职责或完成任务。

- a. Remember to go to the post office, won't you?
b. Remember to do some shopping after work.
c. Clint always remembers to turn off the lights when he leaves the room.

2) Forget

forget doing sth: *forget something that happened in the past*. 忘记了已做过的某事。

I forgot locking the door. So when I came back, I found the door locked. As far as I know, the door should be open.

forget to do sth: *forget to perform a responsibility, duty or*

task 忘记要做的事。

As well as getting on everybody's nerves, he's got a habit of borrowing money and *forgetting* to pay it back.

3) Stop

stop doing: 停下经常做的或手头正在做的事。

I really must stop smoking.

stop to do: 中断下来,以便做某事。

Stop to have a rest.

是目的状语,不是宾语。

4) Go on

go on doing sth: 继续做一直在做的事。

a. The teacher went on explaining the text. 老师一直在讲课文。

b. Peter went on sleeping despite the noise.

go on to do sth: 改做另一件事。

a. He welcomed the new students and then went on to explain the college regulations.

b. Finishing the new words, the teacher went on to attack the text.

5) Regret

regret doing sth: *regret something that happened in the past*.
对已发生的事感到遗憾。

a. I don't regret telling her what I thought, even if it upset her. 我并不后悔把自己的想法告诉她,尽管这让她很恼火。

b. I regret letting slip that opportunity. 我真后悔错过了那次机会。

c. I regret lending him so much money. He never paid me back. 我真后悔把那么多钱借给他,他从来不还。

d. Now he regrets not having gone to university.

regret to do sth: *regret to say, to tell someone, or to inform someone of some bad news.* 遗憾地告诉或通知某人某个坏消息。

a. We regret to inform you that we are unable to offer you employment.

b. I regret to tell you that you failed the test.

c. We regret to inform you that the flight has been cancelled.

74. 其他用动名词的结构

► 1. have	{	difficulty	(in) doing sth
		trouble	
		problem	
		(a lot of) fun	
		(lots of) pleasure	
		a hard time	
		a good time	
		a difficult time	

但要注意: take the trouble *to do sth*, trouble *to do sth*, have (no) time *to do sth*

a. I worked so late in the office last night that I hardly had time _____ the last bus.

A. to have caught

B. to catch

C. catching

D. having caught

正确答案: B

W: How do you find your new apartment?

M: Well, it's quite nice really, although I *have a hard time getting used to living* in a big place.

Q: What is the man's problem?

A: He finds the new apartment too big for him.

- 2. can't help doing, can't resist doing, can't keep from doing, can't hold back from doing, can't keep back from doing 这些短语均表示“情不自禁…，不得不…”

不过注意下列短语要接不定式: can't help but do, can't but do, can't choose but do, etc.

No one can help liking Tom; he is such a cute boy.

- 3. be worth doing, “值得做…”。主动形式表示被动的意思。

be worthy of *being done* 或 be worthy to be done

- a. The book is worth *reading*.
- b. The book is worthy *of being read*.
- c. The book is worthy *to be read*.

第三节 动名词复合结构

75. 动名词复合结构构成: my doing/Tom's doing

物主代词(如: his, my, your 等)或所有格名词(如: Mary's, Tom's 等)与动名词连用, 即构成动名词的复合结构(his doing, Mary's doing), 用来引出动名词的逻辑主语, 以区别于句子主

语。请比较：

- a. Clint insisted on reading the letter. Clint 坚持要看信。
(Clint 看了信)
- b. Clint insisted on *my reading* the letter. Clint 坚持要我看信。(我不得不看信)
- c. Would you mind telling us the whole story? 你是否愿意把事情经过告诉我们?(你告诉)
- d. Would you mind *Tom's telling* us the whole story? =
Would you mind if Tom tells us the whole story? 你是否愿意让 Tom 把事情经过告诉我们?(Tom 告诉)
- e. He disliked working late. 他不喜欢工作到很晚。
- f. He disliked *my working* late. 他不喜欢我工作到很晚。
- g. I object to making private calls on this phone. 我不赞成用这部电话机打私人电话。
- h. I object to *his making* private calls on this phone. 我不赞成他用这部电话机打私人电话。

76. 动名词复合语结构用法

► 1. 这种结构常在句中作主语或宾语。

- a. *Tom's coming* home at last was a great consolation. (作主语)
- b. Do you mind *my making* a suggestion? (作及物动词宾语)
- c. Our discussion of earthquakes would be incomplete if we didn't raise the possibility of *their being caused* by external forces. (作介词宾语)要是我们没有考虑到外部力量造成地震的可能性,那么我们对于地震的研究还有欠缺。
- d. Clint insisted on *my reading* the letter.

- e. What are the chances of *a sleepwalker's committing* a murder or doing something else extraordinary in his sleep? 梦游者在睡梦中实施谋杀或做出其他一些超常活动的可能性有多大呢?

这种动名词复合结构在某些情况下,可以将其中的物主代词(如:his, my, your 等)改为宾格代词(如:him, me, you 等)或将其中的所有格名词(如:Mary's, Tom's 等)改为普通格名词(如:Mary, Tom 等)。

- a. It's no use *Tom arguing* with his boss.
- b. Do you mind *me making* a suggestion?
- c. I am annoyed about *John forgetting* to pay.

► 2. 在应用动名词复合结构时,什么时候用普通格什么时候用所有格,一般遵循下面规定:

1) 若动名词复合结构在句中作主语,最好用所有格形式:

- a. *Tom's refusing* to accept the invitation upset me.
- b. *His refusing* to accept the invitation upset me. (不宜用 him refusing)
- c. It was a great consolation *his coming* home at last. (不宜用 him coming)

2) 动名词复合结构在句中作宾语时,用普通格或所有格均可。

- a. Do you mind *me making* a suggestion?
- b. I am annoyed about *John forgetting* to pay.

温故知新: In Brief

在三种非谓语动词当中,动名词用法相对来说较为简单。重

点内容有：

1. 动名词作主语的句子，如 It is no use doing sth.
2. 动名词作宾语的各种句型。我们需要熟记这些句型，这也是各类考试出题重点所在。
3. 理解动名词复合结构。

在《驾驭语法》一书中，我们还将更深入地讨论动名词的时态和语态等用法。

第八章 动名词综合练习

8.1 用动词适当形式填空:

1. The text needs _____ (explain) once again.
2. The movie is worth _____ (see).
3. I've had a hard time _____ (learn) English.
4. I still remember _____ (take) you to Beijing for the first time.
5. Clint always remembers _____ (turn) off the lights when he leaves the room.
6. Now he regrets _____ (not, go) to university.
7. We regret _____ (inform) you that the flight has been cancelled.
8. I regret _____ (let) slip that opportunity.
9. Peter went on _____ (sleep) despite the noise.
10. He welcomed the new students and then went on _____ (explain) the college regulations.
11. The teacher has had some problems _____ (decide) when they should return the final papers to the students.
12. Mr. Smith regretted _____ (blame) his secretary for the mistake, for he later discovered it was his own fault.
13. The boy is constantly being told not to scratch the paint off the wall, but he goes on _____ (do) it all the same.
14. You must tell me the truth. I insist on _____ (tell) the truth.

8.2 单项选择 (综合练习):

15. It's no good _____ money on make-up.
A. of you to waste
B. for you to waste
C. to waste
D. your wasting
16. _____ what John will be doing next.
A. No saying
B. There's no to say
C. There's no saying
D. Not to say
17. There is no point _____ the piano, unless you practice every day.
A. to learn to play
B. in learning to play
C. by learning to play
D. having learned to play
18. The teachers have had some problems _____ when they should return the final papers to the students.
A. to decide
B. deciding
C. decided
D. having decided
19. Although a teenager, Fred could resist _____ what to do and what not to do.
A. to be told
B. having been told
C. being told
D. to have been told

20. I can't understand _____ a decision until it is too late.
 A. him to postpone to make
 B. his postpone making
 C. his postponing to make
 D. his postponing making
21. At six o'clock in the evening, when a cat ran through a truck it narrowly escaped _____ over.
 A. running
 B. to be run
 C. from running
 D. being run
22. It's a waste of time _____ with such a silly fellow.
 A. trying to reason
 B. tried to reason
 C. for trying to reason
 D. to trying reasoning
23. Ann prefers _____ taking an examination.
 A. writing a term paper than
 B. writing a term paper to
 C. to write a term paper and
 D. to write a term paper than
24. The teacher said that he wouldn't tolerate _____ late every day.
 A. for me to arrive
 B. me arrived
 C. me to arrive
 D. my arriving
25. Many of the things we do involve _____ some risk in order to achieve a satisfactory result.

- A. taking
B. take care
C. to take
D. being taking
26. I don't think you will have any difficulty _____ a driving license.
A. for getting
B. to get
C. having got
D. getting
27. Urban mothers had difficulty _____ their children into child care facilities.
A. in getting
B. to get
C. get
D. for getting
28. We regret _____ you that the materials you ordered are out of stock.
A. informing
B. to inform
C. having inform
D. to have informed
29. Sam is getting _____ to go to a party, but is having trouble _____ on what clothes to wear.
A. to dress/deciding
B. to be dressed/to decide
C. dressed/deciding
D. dressing/deciding
30. Putting in a new window will _____ cutting away part of

- the roof.
- A. include
 - B. involve
 - C. contain
 - D. comprise
31. I will overlook _ _ _ so rude to my sister this time but don't let it happen again.
- A. you to be
 - B. your being
 - C. you to have been
 - D. you having been
32. Technology will play a key role in _____ future life-styles.
- A. to shape
 - B. shaping
 - C. shape of
 - D. shaped
33. _____ can help but be fascinated by the world into which he is taken by the science fiction.
- A. Everybody
 - B. Anybody
 - C. Somebody
 - D. Nobody
34. When Jane fell off the bike, the other children _____.
- A. were not able to help laughter
 - B. could not help but laughing
 - C. could not help laughing
 - D. could not help to laugh
35. Ted has told me that he always escapes _____ as he has

- got a very fast sports car.
- A. to fine
 - B. to be fined
 - C. being fined
 - D. having been fined
36. There is ____ that this has been a difficult year for the company.
- A. not to deny
 - B. not denying
 - C. no denying
 - D. without denying
37. After the listening test, the students went on _____ some sentences.
- A. translating
 - B. translate
 - C. translated
 - D. to translate
38. It's no good _____ me. You'd better _____ someone else.
- A. to ask/to try
 - B. to ask/try
 - C. asking/tried
 - D. asking/try
39. My husband suggested _____ to Scotland for a holiday, but I favored _____ Wales instead.
- A. to go \ to visit
 - B. going \ visiting
 - C. to go \ visiting
 - D. going \ to visit

40. Don't worry, Philip is quite used _ _ _ in such heavy traffic as this.
- A. to driving
 - B. to have driven
 - C. to be driving
 - D. to drive
41. No one then thought that Tom's suggestion was worth _____.
- A. to be considered
 - B. to consider
 - C. considering
 - D. being considered
42. The teacher doesn't permit _ _ _ in class.
- A. smoke
 - B. to smoke
 - C. smoking
 - D. to have a smoke
43. If he doesn't give up cigarettes, he will risk _____ even his present state of health.
- A. lost
 - B. losing
 - C. being lost
 - D. having lost
44. My son simply doesn't understand _____ what's best for him.
- A. me in wanting
 - B. my wanting
 - C. me to want
 - D. I've wanted

45. Almost every night, just as I am going to sleep, my wife nudges me and asks me if I have remembered _____ the alarm clock.
- A. winding up
 - B. to wind up
 - C. having wound up
 - D. to have wound up
46. _____ to inanimate objects, such as machines, is a form of animism.
- A. When attributing emotion
 - B. Attributing emotion
 - C. Emotion is attributed
 - D. If emotion is attributed

第八章 动名词综合练习答案

8.1 用动词适当形式填空：

1. explaining/to be explained
2. seeing
3. learning
4. taking
5. to turn
6. not going
7. to inform
8. letting
9. sleeping
10. to explain
11. deciding
12. blaming
13. doing
14. your telling

8.2 单项选择 (综合练习)：

- 15.D 16.C 17.B 18.B 19.C 20.D 21.D 22.A
23.B 24.D 25.A 26.D 27.A 28.B 29.C 30.B
31.B 32.B 33.D 34.C 35.C 36.C 37.D 38.D
39.B 40.A 41.C 42.C 43.B 44.B 45.B 46.B

被动语态

第一节 被动语态的构成

77. 被动语态的构成

► 1. 被动语态的构成是: be + 过去分词。请看下表:

主动句	被动句	
I clean the window.	The window <i>is cleaned</i> by me.	被动语态由 be + 过去分词构成; 主动句的主语: I, you, he 变成被动句中 by 的宾语: by me, by you, by him; 主动句的宾语: the window 变成被动句的主语。
You clean the window.	The window <i>is cleaned</i> by you.	
He cleans the window.	The window <i>is cleaned</i> by him.	

► 2. 根据时态的不同, 被动语态中的 be 动词可以有各种变化:

时态	主动句	被动句	Be 的变化
一般现在时	He <i>cleans</i> the window.	The window <i>is cleaned</i> by him.	<i>is</i>
现在进行时	He <i>is cleaning</i> the window.	The window <i>is being cleaned</i> by him.	<i>is being</i>
现在完成时	He <i>has cleaned</i> the window.	The window <i>has been cleaned</i> by him.	<i>has been</i>
一般过去时	He <i>cleaned</i> the window.	The window <i>was cleaned</i> by him.	<i>was</i>
过去进行时	He <i>was cleaning</i> the window.	The window <i>was being cleaned</i> by him.	<i>was being</i>
过去完成时	He <i>had cleaned</i> the window.	The window <i>had been cleaned</i> by him.	<i>had been</i>
一般将来时	He <i>will clean</i> the window.	The window <i>will be cleaned</i> by him.	<i>will be</i>
将来完成时	He <i>will have cleaned</i> the window.	The window <i>will have been cleaned</i> by him.	<i>will have been</i>
完成进行时 (have been doing) 几乎不用被动语态。进行时 (be doing) 也较少用被动语态。			

第二节 被动语态的用法

78. 被动语态中的介词 by 通常不要

通常被动语态在使用中是不带 by 短语的, 即不给出被动动作的实施者。原因主要有: 不知道动作的实施者; 或谁是实施者并不重要。具体包括:

► 1. 动作的实施者很明显，因而没有必要提到：

- a. The rubbish hasn't been collected. 垃圾没有被清走。
- b. Your hand will be X-rayed. 你的手要拍 X 片。
- c. The streets are swept every day. 街道每天都清扫。

► 2. 不知道谁是或没有必要提及动作的实施者：

- a. The President has been murdered. 总统被暗杀了。
- b. My car has been moved! 我的车被人挪动过。
- c. Rice is grown in many countries. 很多国家种植水稻。
- d. The library was built in 1890. 该图书馆于 1890 年建成。

► 3. 当动作的实施者是泛指人们时：

这样使用的动词有：acknowledge, assume, believe, claim, consider, estimate, feel, find, know, presume, report, say, think 等。

主动句	被动句
People believe him to be honest. 人们相信他是诚实的。	He is believed to be honest. 相信他是诚实的。
People suspected him of receiving stolen goods. 人们怀疑他接受了赃物。	He was suspected of receiving stolen goods. 他被怀疑接受了赃物。

► 4. 主动句的主语是不定代词 one, you, they 时，我们通常用被动语态。

One/You see this kind of advertisement everywhere.

宜改为：This kind of advertisement is seen everywhere. 这

样的广告随处可见。

They are building a new public library in our town.

宜改为: A new public library is being built in our town. 在我们小镇上正在兴建一个新的公共图书馆。

- 5. 在主从句中, 使用被动语态可避免改换句子主语 (这时可以接 by 短语):

主动句	被动句
When he arrived home, <u>a detective</u> arrested him.	最好改为: When he arrived home, he was arrested.
When their mother was ill, <u>neigh-</u> <u>bors</u> looked after the children.	最好改为: When their mother was ill, the children were looked after by neighbors.

79. 不及物动词没有被动语态

一般来说, 能带有宾语的动词才可以有被动语态, 因此, 不及物动词和系动词是没有被动语态的, 而及物动词才可以有被动语态。

He looks fine. (没有被动语态)

He came here last night. (没有被动语态)

80. 间接宾语用作被动语态的主语

对于双宾语 (即句子含有一个直接宾语和一个间接宾语) 的被动语态, 从理论上讲, 可以有两种被动语态形式:

Someone gave me a gift. → I was given a gift.

Someone gave a gift to me. → A gift was given to me.

但是, 把间接宾语“人”作为被动句的主语更常用。

81. 静态被动形式

I locked the door two minutes ago. The door <i>was locked</i> by me two minutes ago.	这里的 <i>was locked</i> 强调动作。
Now the door <i>is locked</i> .	这里的 <i>is locked</i> 并没有强调动作，而只是在说明门的状况。这里的 <i>locked</i> 起着形容词的作用，用来描述一种存在的状态而非动作，我们姑且称之为“静态被动形式”。

再比如：

- Clint broke the window last night.
- The window *was broken* last night. (强调动作) 这窗户是昨天晚上打碎的。
- Now the window *is broken*. (静态被动) 现在窗子碎了。

常见的这种静态被动形式有：*interested*, *excited*, *satisfied*, *married*, *disappointed*, *scared*, *frightened*, *worried*, *lost* 等。这种被动语态后面一般不接介词 *by*，而是用其他介词。

- I am *interested in* grammar.
- I am *satisfied with* Clint's grammar course.
- She is *married to* her teacher.
- The table is *made of* wood.
- Are you *scared of* snakes? 你怕蛇吗?

82. *get* 与被动语态

get 可与过去分词连用：

既可以构成被动语态：

- a. My watch **got broken** while I was playing with the children.
- b. He **got caught** by the police because he exceeded the speed limit. 由于超速，他让警察给截住了。

也可以接静态的被动形式，表示主语的状态，这一用法经常使用：

- c. I stopped working because **I got tired**.
- d. I **got worried** because he was two hours late.
- e. She is **getting dressed** to the party and has trouble deciding what clothes to wear.

8.3. have/get sth done

我们可以用 have sth done 或者 get sth done (主要用在口语中)来表示：

► 1. 安排别人把事情做好。(主要用法)

- a. The roof of Clint's house was damaged in a storm, so he arranged for somebody to repair it. Yesterday a workman came and repaired the roof. Then we can say:

Clint **had the roof repaired** yesterday. 昨天，clint 找人把屋顶给修了。

The roof was repaired not by Clint himself, but by the workman.

- b. A: Are you going to repair the car yourself? 你打算自己修车?

B: No, I'm going to **have it repaired**. 不，我打算找人

修。

- c. I must *get my hair cut*. = I want someone to cut my hair.
- d. You should *get / have your bike repaired*.
- e. If you don't get out of my house, I'll *have you arrested*.
你要是不给我出去, 我就叫人把你抓起来。

► 2. 谈论发生在自己身上的事。

有时, have sth done 完全表达另外一种意思。例如:

- a. We *had all our money stolen* while we were on holiday.
度假的时候我们的钱全让人给偷了。

“钱被偷”并不是我们有意去安排的。这一用法往往表示发生在自己身上的事, 尤其是意外的、甚至是不幸的事情。例如:

- b. I got my car stolen last year. 去年, 我的车让人给偷了。
- c. Have you ever had your passport stolen? 你护照被偷过吗?
- d. Joe had his leg broken in a fight. 在一次打架中, Joe 把腿弄折了。
- e. It took me two hours to get the washing done. 花了我两个小时才把衣服洗完。
- f. Don't get your plans changed. 别改变你的计划。

温故知新: In Brief

总的来说, 被动语态是较为简单的。要熟练掌握被动语态的各种时态变化形式。掌握 have sth done 的句型。

另外, 学好被动语态有助于理解非谓语动词的语态变化, 这将在《驾驭语法》一书中讨论。

第九章 被动语态练习

9.1 把下列句子变成被动语态

1. Mr. Clint teaches our grammar.
2. Mr. Clint will teach our grammar.
3. Mr. Clint is teaching our grammar.
4. Mr. Clint taught our grammar.
5. Mr. Clint has taught our grammar for 2 years.
6. He wrote the book.
7. He will invite you to the party.
8. John is writing the report.
9. The teacher is going to explain the lesson.
10. Bob mailed the package.
11. The children have eaten the cake.
12. I didn't write that note. Jim wrote it.
13. Mr. Smith hasn't written those letters. Has Mr. Williams written them?
14. Is Mr. Brown painting your house?
15. His tricks won't fool me.
16. Someone was cleaning the room when I arrived.

9.2 如有可能，将下列句子变为被动语态，有必要时加上 by 短语。

17. People grow corn in many countries.
18. Peter came here two months ago.
19. Someone made this antique table in 1900.
20. Great changes have taken place in Beijing these years.

21. An accident happened last night.
22. Someone stole my purse.
23. The Chinese invented paper, the main writing material today.
24. Someone was making the coffee when I walked into the kitchen.
25. Translators have translated that book into many languages.
26. Is Mr. Clint teaching our grammar this semester?
27. When did someone invent the telephone?
28. When is someone going to announce the results of the contest?
29. You can see this sort of advertisement everywhere.
30. If you expose a film to light while you are developing it, you will ruin the negatives(底片).
31. They teach English in every school in that country.
32. They are going to build the new hospital next year. They have already built the new elementary school.

9.3 间接宾语用作被动语态的主语

33. They will send you a bill at the end of the month.
34. A local advertising company has offered Maria a good job.
35. Some company paid Fred three hundred dollars in consulting fees.
36. Peking University has awarded John a scholarship.
37. A clerk handed Ann a menu at the restaurant.

9.4 get 与被动语态连用

38. There was an accident, but nobody _____. (hurt)
39. We didn't have a map, so we _____. (lose)
40. We can leave as soon as you _____. (dress)
41. When _____ you _____? (marry)
42. How long did it take you to _____ to living here? (ac-custom)
43. Sam was supposed to be home an hour ago, but he still isn't here. I _____. (worry)
44. Just try to take it easy. Don't _____. (upset)
45. I _____ because everybody gave me different advice. (confuse)
46. _____ you _____ to the party? (invite)
47. I _____, so I didn't stay for the end of the movie. (bore)
48. I _____ on Fridays. I'll give you the money I owe you next Friday, Okay? (pay)
49. First, they _____. (engage)
Then, they _____. (marry)
Later, they _____. (divorce)
Finally, they _____. (remarry) Today they are very happy.

9.5 have sth done

50. Why did you take your car to the garage (修车厂)? I _____. (repair)
51. Why did you take your jacket to the cleaner's? I _____. (clean)
52. I can't cut my hair myself. I need to _____. (cut)

53. The coat is dirty. I must _____. (it/clean)
54. They didn't paint the house themselves. They _____.
(paint)
55. Did you make the curtains yourself? No, I _____.
(make)
56. I lost my key. I'll have to _____ (another key/make)
57. When was the last time you _____? (your hair/cut)
58. _____ (you/a newspaper/deliver) to your house or do
you go to the shop to buy one?
59. A: What are those workmen doing in your garden?
B: Oh, we _____ (a swimming pool/build)
60. A: Where are you going, Joe?
B: I am going to _____. (the film/develop)

9.6 根据情景回答问题，用 have sth done 的句型。

61. John's leg was broken in an accident.
What happened to John?
He _____ in an accident.
62. Sarah's bag was stolen on a train.
What happened to Sarah?
She _____ on a train.
63. Clint's hat was blown off in the wind.
What happened to Clint?
He _____ in the wind.
64. His passport was taken away from him by the police.
What happened to him?
He _____ from him by the police.

第九章 被动语态练习答案

9.1 把下列句子变成被动语态

1. Our grammar is taught by Mr. Clint.
2. Our grammar will be taught by Mr. Clint.
3. Our grammar is being taught by Mr. Clint.
4. Our grammar was taught by Mr. Clint.
5. Our grammar has been taught by Mr. Clint for 2 years.
6. The book was written by him.
7. You will be invited to the party by him.
8. The report is being written by John.
9. The lesson is going to be explained by the teacher.
10. The package was mailed by Bob.
11. The cake has been eaten by the children.
12. That note wasn't written by me, but by Jim.
13. Those letters haven't been written by Mr. Smith.
14. Is your house being painted by Mr. Brown?
15. I won't be fooled by his tricks.
16. The room was being cleaned when I arrived.

9.2 如有可能, 将下列句子变为被动语态, 有必要时加上 by 短语。

17. Corn is grown in many countries.
18. 没有被动语态
19. This antique table was made in 1900.
20. 没有被动语态
21. 没有被动语态

22. My purse was stolen.
23. Paper, the main writing material today, was invented by the Chinese.
24. The coffee was being made when I walked into the kitchen.
25. That book has been translated into many languages.
26. Is our grammar being taught by Mr. Clint this semester?
27. When was the telephone invented?
28. When are the results of the contest going to be announced?
29. This sort of advertisement can be seen everywhere.
30. If a film is exposed to light while it is being developed, the negatives(底片) will be ruined.
31. English is taught in every school in that country.
32. The new hospital is going to be built next year. The new elementary school has already been built.

9.3 间接宾语用作被动语态的主语

33. You will be sent a bill at the end of the month.
34. Maria has been offered a good job by a local advertising company.
35. Fred was paid three hundred dollars in consulting fees.
36. John has been awarded a scholarship by Peking University.
37. Ann was handed a menu at the restaurant.

9.4 get 与被动语态连用

38. got hurt
39. got lost

- 40. get dressed
- 41. will... get married
- 42. get accustomed
- 43. get worried
- 44. get upset
- 45. got confused
- 46. Have... got invited
- 47. got bored
- 48. get paid
- 49. got engaged
 - got married
 - got divorced
 - got remarried.

9.5 have sth done

- 50. had it repaired
- 51. had it cleaned
- 52. have it cut
- 53. have it cleaned
- 54. had it painted
- 55. had it made.
- 56. have it made
- 57. had your hair cut.
- 58. Do you have a newspaper delivered
- 59. have a swimming pool built
- 60. have the film developed

9.6 根据情景回答问题。

- 61. He had his leg broken in an accident

62. She had her bag stolen on a train.
63. He had his hat blown off in the wind.
64. He had his passport taken away from him by the police.

情态动词

第一节 概述

84. 情态动词概述

<p>英文中情态动词有： can/could, may/might, shall/ should, will/would, must, had better</p>	<p>其他类似表达： be able to(与 can 类似), be going to (与 will 类似), ought to, be sup- posed to (与 should 类似), have to, have got to (与 must 类似); 此外, need, dare 既可以用作情态动词, 也可以用作实义动词。</p>
<p>情态动词用法特点：</p>	

<p>1. <u>词义</u>: 情态动词有别于助动词 (be, have, do), 情态动词有其自身的词汇意义, 而且通常是一词多义。用来表示可能、建议、愿望、必要、允许、能力、怀疑等等, 以表示说话者对某种行为或状态的看法或态度。</p>	<p>比如, must 既可以表示强烈的必要性, 也可以表示推测。 I <u>must</u> go to school today. 今天我<u>得</u>上学去。 John isn't in class. He <u>must</u> be sick. 约翰今天没上课, 他<u>一定是</u>病了。</p>
<p>2. <u>在谓语中的作用</u>: 情态动词在句中不能单独作句子谓语, 必须和实义动词一起构成复合谓语。</p>	<p>1) 没有单数第三人称的变化: He can dance. 不说: He cans dance. *</p>
	<p>2) 后面只能接动词原形: 不说: He can dances. * 不说: He can danced. * 不说: He can dancing. *</p>
	<p>3) 不需借助助动词 do 来构成否定式或疑问式: He can't dance. 不说: He doesn't can dance. * Can he dance? 不说: Does he can dance? *</p>
	<p>4) can, may, will, shall 分别有过去时态的变化: could, might, would, should。但并不一定都表示过去时间的动作。(具体用法后面详述)</p>

第二节 情态动词用法

85. 表示能力或可能 ability/possibility

can/could/be able to

► 1. 现在或将来的能力

can 表示因为具备某些特点或条件，某人能够完成某件事或某事是可能存在的。所以 can 既有能力的含义，也有可能的意思。（注意：这里的“可能”与后边讨论的“推测”是不同的。）

- a. Bob can play the piano. He has taken lessons for many years. But I can't. （后天获得的能力）
- b. John is strong. He can lift that heavy box. （能力）
- c. A fish can't walk, but it can swim. （天赋的能力）
- d. Dogs can bark, but they cannot talk. （天赋的能力）
- e. The theater can seat 10,000 people. （可能）这剧院可坐一万人。
- f. I can walk to school. It's not far. （可能）
- g. You can see fish at an aquarium. （水族馆）（可能）
- h. You can buy stamps at the post office, but you can't buy shoes there. （可能）

表示现在的能力一般不用 be able to.

► 2. 过去的能力

在表示能力时，could 可以作为 can 的过去式来表示过去存在的能力（注意这句话的潜台词：如果不是表示能力，could 则不表示过去。例如 could 可以表示现在的“许可”，“推测”。）

- a. Our son could talk when he was two years old. 表示过去的能用 can 的过去式 could。
- b. I could run fast when I was a child, but now I can't.
- c. In those days few workers could support their families. 那时很少有工人能够养家糊口。

► 3. 在表示“过去的能力”时, could 和 was/were able to 的用法区别:

1) could 只能表示过去“一般的能力, 总的能力”。所谓“一般的能力 general ability”, 即我们在过去想干什么就随时可以干什么。(这时, 我们也可用 was/were able to。)

- a. I **could** / **was able to** recite several poems when I was 3 years of age. 我在三岁时就能背诵几首诗。
- b. I **could** / **was able to** run fast when I was a child, but now I can't. 小时候我能跑得很快, 但现在不行了。
- c. He **could** / **was able to pull** down a bull and was acknowledged as a man with superman strength. (他曾能够拉倒一头牛, 被公认为是具有神力的人。)我们还可以说: He used to be able to...

2) 而要表示主语在过去某个特定场合所表现出的“特定的能力, 具体的能力”, 或表示某人在某一场合设法成功地完成了某件事, 而非表示泛指的能力时, 我们要用 was/were able to。此时, was/were able to 意思相当于 succeeded in doing, managed to do。(When used to denote past ability, **COULD** does not refer to a single instance of ability on a particular occasion, but rather, it signifies an ability in a very general sense. The successful demonstration of ability on a particular past occasion is expressed by means of “be able to”, “manage to do”, “succeed in”, etc.) 下面例句均不能用 could:

- d. With the aid of the wood, he **was able to** swim across the river. 因为有了那块木头, 他游到了河的对岸。
- e. I applied everywhere and finally **I was able to** get a good job. 我到处应聘, 最后找到了一份好工作。
- f. He hurried to the station, and he **was able to** catch the

train. 他匆匆忙忙赶到车站，赶上了火车。

g. The fire spread through the building quickly but everybody **was able to** escape. = everybody managed to escape. 大火很快蔓延到整栋大楼，但是人们还是都逃了出来。

h. The two boys tried many ways to catch that sly fox and **were able to** do so at last. 两个孩子试用了多种方法抓那只狡猾的狐狸，最后终于成功了。

i. Although the pilot was badly hurt he **was able to** explain what had happened. 飞行员的伤势虽然很严重，但是他还能够解释发生的一切。

j. Tom has started an exercise program. He **was able to** run two miles yesterday without stopping or slowing down.
汤姆已开始了训练计划，他昨天没有停也没有放慢速度跑了两英里。

3) 在否定句中 could 和 was/were able to 可以互换，即在否定句中它们就不存在上述区别了。

a. I applied everywhere and I **couldn't** get any good job.

b. The fire spread through the building quickly and people **couldn't** escape.

86. 表示许可 permission (给予允许)

1) 表示“许可”，我们一般用陈述句。(若用疑问句则表示“请求 request”，见 88 小节)

2) 肯定的陈述表示允许某人做某事；否定的陈述则表示不允许某人做某事。

3) 常用的情态动词：may, might, can, could。但我们多用 can 或 be allowed to do... 表示许可。

► 1. 肯定句——给予许可

- a. I **can** leave the office as soon as I have finished. = I am allowed to leave the office... 我工作一结束就可以离开办公室。
- b. You **can** use my car tomorrow. 明天你可以用我的车。
- c. ——“**May** I turn on the TV?” 我可以开电视吗? (may 用在疑问句中表示“请求许可”)
——“Yes, of course you **may**.” 当然可以。(may 用在肯定的陈述句中表示“给予许可”)

► 2. 否定句——拒绝许可, 甚至禁止

- d. ——“**May** I borrow your car?” (may 用在疑问句中表示“请求许可”)
——“No, I'm afraid you **may not**.” (may 用在否定的陈述句中表示“拒绝许可”)
- e. You **can't** take your camera into the museum. 照相机不让带进博物馆。
- f. You **can't** take the test paper out of the classroom. = You are not allowed to take... 试卷不允许带出教室。
我们还可用 **must not** 表示强烈的拒绝许可——禁止。
must not 比 **cannot**, **may not** 语气强烈。
- g. Students **must not** take the test papers out of the classroom. 任何学生不得把试卷带出教室。

► 3. could 一般不用来表示现在的许可, 而用来表示过去的许可

——“**Can** I ask you a question?”

——不说：“Yes, of course you *could*.” *

表示过去的许可可与 *was/were allowed to do* 互换。

I *could* read/*was allowed to* read what I liked when I was a child. 我小的时候爱看什么书，就看什么书。

不过，若表示过去允许进行某项特定的活动，我们要用 *was/were allowed to do*。这一区别与 *could* 和 *was/were able to* 的区别类似。

Yesterday evening, Peter was allowed to watch TV for an hour. 不说: Peter could watch...

could 更多是用在陈述句中表示“建议”（见 91 小节）；用在疑问句中表示“请求”。（见 88 小节）

87. 表示请求 request

1) 表示“请求”，我们通常用一般疑问句。

2) 两种“请求”：

①主语用第一人称：表示请求对方许可我们做某事。这种“请求”是和上述表示“许可”相对应的：我们若用陈述句则是表示许可；用一般疑问句则表示“请求”，请求对方许可我们做某事。

——“*Can* I ask you a question?”（*can* 用在疑问句中表示请求允许）

——“Yes, of course you *can*.”（*can* 用在陈述句中表示给予允许）

——“*Can* I have some more wine?” 我可以再喝点酒吗？

——“No, I'm afraid you *can't*.” 恐怕你不能再要了。

②主语用第二人称：表示请求对方为我们做某事。

► 1. 第一人称:请求对方允许我(们)做某事

May I/we ?

Could I/we?

Can I/we ?

Might I/we? (很少用)

May I ? Could I? May I 和 could I 表示较正式、很礼貌地提出请求;	May I please borrow your car? May I borrow your car please? Could I please borrow your car? Could I borrow your car please?
Can I 则是非正式地请求允许, 一般用于说话人与对方相当熟悉的情况下。比如你向你的同学借一支笔。	Can I borrow your pen?
Might I 显得过于正式和客气, 所以一般很少用。	
典型回答: Certainly. Yes, certainly. Of course. Yes, of course. Sure. (美语, 非正式)	

► 2. 第二人称:请求对方为我们做某事

Would you ? Could you ? Will you ? Can you ? Would you 和 Could you 都是用来表示很客气地请求对方, 客气程度相同; Will you 不如 Would you 客气; Can you 常用于非正式场合或熟人之间。	Would you please lend me your car? Would you lend me your car please? Could you please lend me your car? Could you lend me your car please? Can you pass me the salt, Mom?
---	--

<p>典型回答:</p> <p>Yes, I'd like to.</p> <p>Yes, I'd be happy to.</p> <p>Yes, I'd be glad to.</p> <p>Certainly.</p> <p>Sure. (非正式)</p>	<p>对于一个礼貌的请求我们通常是给予肯定的回答, 若真是要否定, 我们往往这样说: I'd like to, but... 在 but 后面给出不能答应的理由。</p>
---	---

A: I am on duty this afternoon. *Will you please* cover for me? I have a doctor's appointment. 今天下午我值班, 你能替我吗? 我得去看医生。

B: I am sorry I can't. My term paper is due tomorrow. 对不起, 我替不了你。我明天得交学期论文。

88. 表示必须 necessity

must, have to, have got to

<p>must 必须</p> <p>have to</p>	<p>All applicants must take an entrance exam.</p> <p>All applicants have to take an entrance exam.</p>
<p>have got to</p> <p>主要用于口语中, 不是很正式。</p> <p>got to 口语中连读成: gotta</p>	<p>I have got to go now. I have a class in ten minutes.</p>
<p>要表示过去必须, 我们要用 had to.</p> <p>must, have got to 没有过去时形式。</p>	<p>I had to study last Sunday.</p>
<p>注意否定意思:</p> <p>don't have to: “不必要”</p> <p>mustn't 或 must not: “千万不要”, 表示禁止。</p>	<p>Tomorrow is Saturday. We don't have to go to school. 明天是周六, 我们不必上学。</p> <p>You must not tell anyone my secret. Do you promise? 你千万别告诉任何人我的秘密, 你能答应我吗?</p>

89. 表示忠告 advisability 或责任 obligation

should, ought to, had better	<p>You should do as you are told.</p> <p>We should study harder because the finals are near. 快要期末考试了, 我们得更用功了。</p> <p>Drivers should/ought to obey the speed limit.</p>
<p>had better</p> <p>常用于口语中。后面接动词原形, 否定用 had better not do, 往往含有一种警告或警示可能出现恶果的意味。比如, 我们再不努力, 可能考试会不及格了。</p>	<p>We had better study harder, or we'll probably fail in the exam.</p>

90. 表示建议 making suggestions

<p>Shall I?</p> <p>Shall we?</p> <p>Shall he?</p> <p>用于第一、三人称的一般问句中, 表示征求对方的“建议”。</p>	<p>Shall I open the window? 要不要我把窗子打开?</p> <p>Shall we leave at two? 我们两点钟走如何?</p> <p>Shall he come with us? 要不要他和我们一起走?</p>
<p>could</p> <p>可以用 can, 但 could 没有 can 那么肯定。</p> <p>并不表示过去。</p>	<p>A: What shall we do this evening?</p> <p>B: We could go to the cinema.</p> <p>It is a nice day. We could go for a walk.</p>
<p>may (just) as well</p> <p>might (just) as well</p> <p>表示推荐更佳方案, 建议换另一种方式做某事。“倒不如…”, “不妨…”</p>	<p>We may as well stay here tonight. 我们今晚不如在这儿过夜。</p> <p>A: I'll go on Monday by train.</p> <p>B: You might just as well wait till Wednesday and go by plane.</p>

其他非情态动词表示建议: Let's... Why don't...?	Let's go to a movie. Why don't we go on a picnic?
---	--

忠告与建议的比较: *should* 表示强烈的、明确的忠告。*could* 表示建议某事的可能性。

A: John doesn't feel good. He has a bad stomachache.

B: He *should* see a doctor. 他应该看医生去。

B: Well, he *could* see a doctor. Or he *could* simply stay in bed for a day and hope he feels better tomorrow. 他可以看医生去, 也可以卧床休息一天, 希望他明天能感觉好些。

A: I need to get to the airport.

B: You *should* take the airport bus. It's cheaper than a taxi.

B: Well, you *could* take the airport bus. Or you *could* take a taxi. Maybe Clint *could* take you. He has a car.

91. shall 的用法

► 1. shall 用于第二、三人称的陈述句, 表示说话人的许诺。

You shall have the money back next week. = I promise you will have... 下星期你就可以拿到钱了。

If he passes the examination he shall have a bicycle. = I promise he will have... 若他能通过考试, 他就能得到一辆自行车。

► 2. shall 用于第二、三人称的陈述句, 还表示说话人强烈的意愿, 甚至威胁。

You shall pay for this. 你一定得为此付出代价!

They shall do as they are told. 他们一定要按照吩咐的去做。

► 3. 在法律条文、规章制度中, 我们常用 shall 表示“必须”

Each competitor shall wear a number. 每位参赛人员必须佩戴号码。

► 4. 用于第一、三人称的一般问句中表示“建议”

- a. Shall I buy you a gift? 要不要我给你买份礼物?
- b. Shall I open the window? 要不要我把窗户打开?
- c. A detective (*n.* 侦探) arrested a criminal and was about to handcuff (*v.* 上手铐) him when a huge gust (*n.* 一阵狂风) of wind blew off the detective's hat. “**Shall I** go and fetch it?” the criminal asked. “Do you take me for a fool?” asked the detective. “You wait here while I go and get it!”

92. 表示意愿 volition

will 或 would 表示说话者愿意做某件事。(具体参见《走近语法》一书中的“一般将来时”。)

A: The phone is ringing.

B: I will get it.

93. 表示过去重复动作 would/used to

我们用 would 或 used to 表示过去重复的动作(repeated action in the past)。例如: When I was a child, my mother **would**

read/used to read me a story at night before bed. 小时候, 晚上睡觉前妈妈常常会给我讲故事。

would do 和 used to do

在这种表示过去反复发生或习惯性的动作时, 我们可用 *would* 或 *used to*, 但二者之间有以下区别:

1) *used to* 可以表示在过去定期重复的动作, 也可以指过去存在的状态, 含有“现在不再…”的含义。*would* 只能用来表示过去重复的动作, 不表示过去的状况。

- a. When I was a boy, I *would/used to go* swimming in a river near my house.
- b. When I was a child, my mother *would/used to read* me a story at night before bed.
- c. Illiteracy (文盲) is still a problem in my country, but it *used to be* much worse. 此句不说: ...it *would be*...
- d. I *used to have* a cat. 此句不说: I *would have* a cat.
- e. There *used to be* a lot of fish in this river, but nothing seems to be in it after it's been polluted by the wastes.
此句不说: There *would be*...
- f. My own mother *used to be* (表示过去的状态, 不用 *would* 替换) very busy the whole day, but as soon as evening came, she *would move* (表示过去的动作, 二者可互换使用) very fast to get ready to meet my father. At that time we didn't understand; we *used to laugh* (表示过去的动作, 二者可互换使用); we *used to tease* (表示过去的动作, 二者可互换使用) her; but now I remember what a tremendous, delicate love she had for him. It didn't matter what happened that day; she was ready with a smile to meet him. 以前, 我妈妈每天总是忙忙碌碌

的,但是只要到了夜幕时分,她就会很快地把家里的一切都料理好,以迎接我爸爸回家。那时我们对此都不理解,因而常常取笑她。但现在我终于明白,这是母亲对父亲多么深厚的爱啊!每天不论发生什么事,她总是微笑着去迎接父亲回家。

2) *used to* 和 *would* 均不能用来表示过去某事发生的次数。

a. I went to that restaurant over ten times when I was in college. (正确)

b. I *used to/would go* to that restaurant *over ten times* when I was in college. (错误)

9.4. 表示推测

► 1. 对现在推测的肯定句:

Expressing degrees of certainty	Why isn't John in class? John 为什么没上课?
客观事实的陈述 100% 确定。	He is sick. 他病了。
must: 强烈的肯定, 对自己陈述的内容很有把握。90% 确定	He must be sick. 他一定是病了。
may, could, might 用于表达较弱的肯定, 没太多把握。少于 50% 的确定。 在肯定句中, 三者差别不大。但在否定句中, couldn't 比 may not, might not 语气强烈得多。(见下文)	He may be sick. 他可能是病了。 He could be sick. He might be sick. I don't really know. He may be at home watching TV. He might be at the library. He could be out of town.
can 一般不表示这种肯定的推测, 但表示否定的推测很常用。can 表示推测只用在否定句和疑问句中。	You can buy stamps at the post office, but you <i>can't</i> buy shoes there.

更多例子:

- a. You've been traveling all day. You **must** be tired.
- b. Carol **must** get very bored in her job. She does the same thing every day.
- c. "I have one teacher who is so forgetful that he gave the same test three weeks in a row. If he does that two more times, I **may pass** it."
- d. Michael: Teacher, is there life after death?
Teacher: Why do you ask?
Michael: I **may need** the extra time to finish all this homework you gave us.

► 2. 对现在推测的否定句:

Degrees of certainty	The restaurant is always empty.
100% 确定。	It is very bad. 这餐馆很糟糕。
can't, couldn't: 强烈地表示说话人认为某事是不可能的。98% 确定。	It can't be very good. 这餐馆不可能很好。 It couldn't be very good.
may not, might not: 说话人提出的一般的可能性。少于 50% 确定。	It may not be very good. 这餐馆可能不太好。 It might not be very good.
说明: must 表示推测, 一般不用在否定句中。 在肯定句中, could, may, might 三者差别不大。但在否定句中, couldn't 比 may not, might not 语气强烈得多。	

Judge: How could you swindle (诈骗) people who trusted in you?

Prisoner: But Judge, people who don't trust you **cannot** be swindled.

法官: 你怎么能够诈骗信任你的人呢?

罪犯: 法官大人, 不信任你的人怎么骗?

► 3. 对过去推测的肯定句: must/can/may/could/might + 完成式。

Degrees of certainty	Why wasn't John in class yesterday? John 昨天怎么没上课?
100% 确定	He was sick. 他病了。
95% 确定	He must have been sick. 他一定是病了。
少于 50% 确定	He may have been sick. 他可能病了。 He could have been sick. He might have been sick.

► 4. 对过去推测的否定句:

Degrees of certainty	
100% 确定	He wasn't sick. 他没有病。
95% 确定 can 表示推测, 一般不用在肯定句中	He couldn't have been sick. 他不可能病了。 He can't have been sick.
少于 50% 确定	He may not have been sick. 他可能没病。 He might not have been sick.

► 5. 表示对将来的推测:

Degrees of certainty	Tomorrow John will take a test. 明天 John 要考试
will: 100% 确定	He will do well on the test. 他会考得很好
should, ought to: 90% 确定	He should do well on the test. 他应该会考好。 He ought to do well on the test.

少于 50% 确定	He may do well on the test. 他可能会考好。 He can do well on the test. He might do well on the test. He could do well on the test.
-----------	--

95. 情态动词与完成式

► 1. “情态动词 + 完成式”表示对过去的推测:

could have done, may have done, might have done, must have done;

can't have done, couldn't have done, may not have done, might not have done.

a. A: The money has disappeared! Who **could have taken** it?

钱没了, 会是谁拿的呢?

B: John could have; he was here alone yesterday. 可能是约翰, 他昨天一个人在这里。

b. The situation was bad but it **could have been** worse. 情况很坏, 但本来还可能更糟糕。

c. You screamed in your sleep last night. You **must have had** a terrible dream. 你昨晚睡觉时大喊大叫了, 你一定是在做恶梦。

d. I can't find my sunglasses. I **may/might have left** them at the restaurant yesterday.

e. The package is gone. Someone **might have picked** it up by mistake.

f. Some women _____ a good salary in a job instead of staying home, but they decided not to work for the sake of the family. (CET-4 2000.01)

- A. must make
- B. should have made
- C. would make
- D. could have made

正确答案:D

► 2. should/ought to have done

表示过去应该做而实际并没有做的动作,含有批评的意思。

- a. You **should have phoned** me last night. 你昨晚应该给我打个电话。

用于否定句中,则表示过去不应该做而实际做了的动作,也含有批评的意思。

A: I feel terribly ill today.

B: You **shouldn't have eaten** those mushrooms yesterday.

Mushrooms don't agree with you. 你昨天本来不应该吃那些蘑菇。你不能吃蘑菇

我们也可用 could have done 表达批评的含义。

- b. You **could have told** me you were getting married. 你本来可以告诉我你要结婚的事嘛。

- c. I **could have lent** you the money. Why didn't you ask me?
我那时是能够把钱借给你的,你为什么不向我借?

► 3. needn't have done

表示本来“无须做…,不必做…”,但实际上做过了。

- a. A: We went to the meeting, but it had been cancelled.

B: Oh, so you **needn't have gone**. 喔,那你本来不必去的。

- b. The restaurant was nearly empty. We **needn't have**

booked a table.

温故知新: In Brief

英文中,情态动词用法较为繁琐,不是在短短的篇幅中能够完全介绍完毕的。读者要想真正活用情态动词,尚需在阅读中细心体会。现附上“情态动词用法一览表”,以备查阅。

情态动词用法一览表

can 的用法:

能力 ability	Bob can play the piano. But I can't. A fish can't walk, but it can swim. The theater can seat 10,000 people. 这家剧院可容纳一万人。
许可 permission 用在肯定句或否定句中;若用在疑问句中则表示“请求 request” 与 may 表示“许可”用法类似,但我们多用 can 或 be allowed to do... 表示许可。	I can leave the office as soon as I have finished. = I am allowed to leave the office... You can use my car tomorrow. You can't take your camera into the museum. You can't take the test paper out of the classroom. = You are not allowed to take...
有礼貌的请求 polite request (用在疑问句中)	Can I use your car? Can Tom use the car whenever he likes? 汤姆能随时用车吗? Can you lend me your car?
在否定句中表示“不可能 impossibility”	You can't see her now because she is out.

could 的用法:

<p>过去的 ability past ability 这时作为 can 的过去式。</p>	<p>Our son could talk when he was two years old. I could run fast when I was a child, but now I can't. In those days few workers could support their families. 那时很少有工人能够养家糊口。</p>
<p>表示有礼貌的请求 polite request 时, 比 can 语气要委婉; 此时 could 并不表示过去。</p>	<p>Could you lend me your car? Could you show me the way? Could I see your license?</p>
<p>表推测时, 确定性少于 50%, 在否定句中表示“不可能 impossibility”, 并不表示过去。 与 might 表示推测的用法类似。</p>	<p>A: Why isn't Clint in class? B: I have no idea. He could be sick. (could 表示现在的可能) The phone is ringing. It could be John. Look at those dark clouds. It could start raining any minute. (could 表示将来的可能)</p>
<p>提建议, make suggestion 可以用 can, 但 could 没有 can 那么肯定。 此时, could 并不表示过去。</p>	<p>A: What shall we do this evening? B: We could go to the cinema. It is a nice day. We could go for a walk.</p>

may 的用法:

polite request	May I use your car?
formal permission	You may take my car.
less than 50% certainty	Ann may know Tom's address. The phone is ringing. It may be John. He may be waiting at the station. 他现在可能在火车站等着。(现在的可能) He may be waiting at the station when we arrive. 我们到达车站时,他将有可能会在火车站等着。(将来的可能)

might 的用法:

less than 50% certainty (表示现在或将来的可能) 在表示推测时, may 和 might 用法差不多,只不过 might 把握性更小,怀疑的语气更重些。	Ann might know Tom's address. The phone is ringing. It might be John. He might be waiting at the station. 他现在可能在火车站等着。(现在的可能) He might be waiting at the station when we arrive. 我们到达车站时,他将有可能会在火车站等着。(将来的可能)
polite request(很少使用)	Might I borrow your car?

will/would/be going to/used to

will 的用法:

100% certainty	I believe he will do well in tomorrow's test.
willingness	A: The phone is ringing. B: I'll get it.
polite request	Will you open the window?

would 的用法:

polite request	Would you open the window please?
表示过去重复的动作 repeated action in the past	When I was a child, my mother would read me a story at night before bed.

used to 的用法:

表示过去重复的动作 repeated action in the past	When I was a child, my mother used to read me a story at night before bed.
表示过去存在的某种状况	There used to be a river here.

shall/should/ought to/be supposed to/had better

shall 的用法:

用于第一、三人称的一般问句中表示“建议”	Shall I buy you a gift? Shall I open the window?
----------------------	---

强烈要求	They shall do as they are told. 他们一定要按吩咐的去做。
承诺	You shall have the money back next week.

should 的用法：

表示劝告 advisability	Drivers should obey the speed limit.
90% certainty 将来的推测	He should do well on the test.

ought to 的用法：

表示劝告 advisability	Drivers ought to obey the speed limit.
90% certainty 将来的推测	He ought to do well on the test.

had better 的用法：

表示劝告 advisability	You had better stay here tonight.
-------------------	-----------------------------------

表示“必须” must/have to/have got to 的用法

must 的用法：

strong necessity	I must study hard.
用在否定句中，表示“禁止 prohibition”	You must not cheat on the exam.
95% certainty	John isn't in class. He must be sick.

have to 的用法:

表示必须 necessity	I have to study hard, for the finals are near.
在口语中, 可用 have got to (不用 于否定句中)	I've got to go now.

第十章 情态动词练习

10.1 判断下列句子中情态动词在使用形式上是否正确, 如果错误请予以改正。

1. He can to speak English well.
2. He can spoke English well.
3. He can speaking English well.
4. He can speaks English well.
5. He cans speak English well.
6. He cans speaks English well.
7. He doesn't can speak English well.
8. Does he can speak English well?
9. They must don't do that again.
10. They must did the work yesterday.
11. They musted do the work yesterday.
12. You had better to do it at once.

10.2 在合适的地方填上 **could** 或 **couldn't** 或 **was/were able to**。

13. They didn't want to come with us at first but we _____ persuade them.
14. Jack was an excellent tennis player. He _____ beat anybody.
15. Jack and John had a game of tennis yesterday. John played very well but in the end Jack _____ beat him.
16. I looked everywhere for the book but I _____ find it.
17. I looked everywhere for the book and finally I _____ find it.

18. Sue wasn't at home when I phoned but I _____ contact her at her office.
19. My mother loved music. She _____ play the piano very well.
20. A girl fell into the river but fortunately we _____ rescue her.
21. I had forgotten to bring my camera so I _____ take any photographs.
22. Although I forgot to bring my camera that day, I _____ take some nice photographs with John's camera.
23. When I worked as a secretary, I _____ type 60 words a minute without making a mistake. My typing skills aren't nearly as good now.
24. Yesterday I typed these reports for my boss. I don't type very well, but I _____ finish the reports without making too many mistakes.
25. When I ran into Mr. Smith yesterday, I _____ recognize him even though I hadn't seen him for years.
26. At the sale yesterday, I _____ get this shirt for half price. Quite a bargain, don't you think?
27. My grandfather was a merchant all his life. He knew how to make a sale by using psychology. He _____ convince anyone to buy anything, whether they needed it or not.

10.3 根据所给情景提出礼貌请求。

28. You want to ask your teacher a question.
29. You're at your friend's apartment. You want to use the phone.
30. You want your boyfriend to meet you in front of the li-

brary at three this afternoon.

31. You knock on your professor's half-open door. He's sitting at his desk. You want to go in.
32. You are at a gas station. You want the attendant to check the oil.
33. You want to see you desk mate's dictionary for a minute.
34. You want a stranger in an airport to keep eye on your luggage while you get a drink of water.

10.4 用 must not 或 don't have to 填空。

35. I've already finished all my homework, so I _____ study tonight.
36. You _____ forget to take your keys with you.
37. You _____ introduce me to Dr. Smith. We've already met.
38. A person _____ become rich and famous in order to live a successful life.
39. A person _____ get married in order to lead a happy and fulfilling life.
40. You _____ play with sharp knives.
41. We _____ go to the concert if you don't want to, but it might be good.
42. I _____ go to the doctor. I'm feeling much better.
43. In order to be a good salesman, you _____ be rude to a customer.
44. This is an once-in-a-lifetime opportunity. We _____ let it pass. We must act.

10.5 在合适的地方填上 would 或 used to。

45. I _____ be very shy. Whenever a stranger came to our house, I _____ hide in a closet.
46. When I was a child, I _____ take a flashlight (手电筒) to bed with me so that I could read comic books without my parents' knowing about it.
47. I remember my aunt very well. Every time she came to our house, she _____ give me a big kiss and pinch my cheek.
48. I _____ be afraid of flying. My heart _____ start pounding every time I stepped on a plane. But now I'm used to flying and enjoy it.

10.6 用动词适当形式填空，以表示推测语气，注意肯定程度的不同。

49. It rained every day during their holiday, so they _____ (not/have) a very nice time.
50. The restaurant _____ (be) very good. It's always full of people.
51. The phone rang but I didn't hear it. I _____ (be) asleep.
52. There _____ (be) a bad accident here. Look at all the broken glass.
53. Jane walked past me without speaking. She _____ (not/see) me.
54. Joe isn't at work today. He _____ (be) ill.
55. Joe wasn't at work last week. He _____ (be) ill.
56. When I woke up this morning, the light was on. I _____ (forget) to turn it off.

57. The lights were red but the car didn't stop. The driver
 _ _ _ (not/see) the red light.
58. She knew everything about our plans. She _ _ _ (listen) to our conversation.
59. I can't find my umbrella. I _ _ _ (leave) it in the restaurant last night.
60. I left my bike outside the house last night and this morning it wasn't there any more. Somebody _ _ _ (take) it.
61. A: He says he saw you at the theater yesterday.
 B: He _ _ _ (not see) me. I wasn't there.
62. A: He has been working the whole morning.
 B: He _ _ _ (be) very tired
63. A: Did you hear me come in last night?
 B: No, I _ _ _ (be) asleep.

10.7 单项选择 (综合练习):

64. Several cases have been reported recently of people who
 _ _ _ read and detect colors with their fingers.
 A. should
 B. can
 C. will
 D. could
65. No one except his secretary _ _ _ go straight into his office without permission.
 A. can
 B. is able to
 C. will
 D. is not allowed to

66. She was absent for the first time yesterday. She _____ sick.
 A. must be
 B. has been
 C. is
 D. must have been
67. He did very badly on the exam. He _____ harder.
 A. must study
 B. must have studied
 C. should study
 D. should have studied
68. He _____ ten lectures on American history, but he only gave two because of his illness.
 A. had given
 B. would give
 C. must have given
 D. should have given
69. We did hold a meeting yesterday, but you _____. So we did not inform you.
 A. did not need attending
 B. needn't attending
 C. did not need to attend
 D. needn't attend
70. We came early and had to wait two hours before the ceremony began. We _____.
 A. should not hurry
 B. must not have hurried
 C. need not hurry
 D. need not have hurried

71. "Have you paid your telephone bill?"
"No, but I _ _ _ yesterday."
A. ought to pay it
B. ought to have paid it
C. must pay it
D. must have paid it
72. He _____ pull down a bull and acknowledged as a man with superman strength.
A. used to be able to
B. would be able to
C. should be able to
D. might be able to

第十章 情态动词练习答案

10.1 判断下列句子中情态动词在使用形式上是否正确, 如果错误请予以改正。

1. He can speak English well.
2. He can speak English well.
3. He can speak English well.
4. He can speak English well.
5. He can speak English well.
6. He can speak English well.
7. He can't speak English well.
8. Can he speak English well?
9. They must not do that again.
10. They must have done the work yesterday.
11. They must have done the work yesterday.
12. You had better do it at once.

10.2 在合适的地方填上 could 或 couldn't 或 was/were able to。

13. were able to
14. could/was able to
15. was able to
16. couldn't
17. was able to
18. was able to
19. could/was able to
20. were able to
21. couldn't

- 22. was able to
- 23. was able to/could
- 24. was able to
- 25. was able to
- 26. was able to
- 27. was able to/could

10.3 根据所给情景提出礼貌请求。(仅作参考)

- 28. Can I ask you a question?
- 29. Can I use the phone?
- 30. Could you meet me in front of the library at three this afternoon?
- 31. Could I come in?
- 32. Will you check the oil?
- 33. Can I use your dictionary for a minute?
- 34. Would you please keep eye on your luggage while I get a drink of water.

10.4 用 must not 或 don't have to 填空。

- 35. don't have to
- 36. must not
- 37. don't have to
- 38. doesn't have to
- 39. doesn't have to
- 40. must not
- 41. don't have to
- 42. don't have to
- 43. must not
- 44. must not

10.5 在合适的地方填上 would 或 used to。

- 45. used to, would
- 46. would
- 47. would
- 48. used to, would

10.6 用动词适当形式填空, 以表示推测语气。

- 49. can't have had
- 50. must be
- 51. must have been
- 52. must have been
- 53. can't have seen
- 54. must be
- 55. must have been.
- 56. must have forgotten
- 57. can't have seen
- 58. must have listened
- 59. must have left
- 60. must have taken
- 61. can't/couldn't have seen
- 62. must be
- 63. must have been

10.7 单项选择 (综合练习):

64. B 65. A 66. D 67. D 68. D 69. C 70. D 71. B
72. A

限定词

在英语中，限定词 (determiner) 与名词的关系最为密切。它总是直接或间接地使用在名词的前面，以限定名词所指的范围，对名词起泛指或特指、定量或不定量等限定修饰作用。

英文中的限定词包括：

- 1) 冠词: the, a, an
- 2) 基数词和序数词: one/first, two/second, three/third, ...
- 3) 指示形容词: this, that, these, those
- 4) 物主形容词: my, your, his, her, our, their
- 5) 数量形容词: a few, a little, much, many, a lot of, some, any, enough, several, most, all, etc.
- 6) 个体形容词: each, every, either, neither, both, etc.
- 7) 名词属格: Mary's, John's, his father's, etc.

冠词是我们最为常见的限定词。其用法在《走近语法》一书中已经详细讨论过。这一章我们主要讨论数量形容词和个体形容词的用法。

第一节 限定词的用法

96. 数量形容词 some/any

- 1. 从与名词搭配来看, some 和 any 均可以与不可数名词和可数名词复数连用, 表示“一些”。另一方面, some 一般用在肯定句中; 而 any 一般用在疑问句和否定句中。例如:

- a. I need *some medicine* to cure my cough.
- b. Can you give me *any advice*?
- c. I want to buy *some computer books*.
- d. I don't have *any friends* here.

► 2. some 的特殊用法。

1) 在表示我们期待一个正面回答或要鼓励对方说“是”时, 在疑问句中要用 some。例如:

- a. Would you like to give me *some* advice?
- b. Can I have *some* more wine?

2) some 与数字连用时, 表示“大约”。这一用法常常暗指这是一个给人以深刻印象的很高的数字。例如:

- a. *Some 1,500* passengers and crew died aboard the Titanic when it sank on April 14, 1912 after hitting an iceberg. It lies at a depth of *some 4,000 meters*, *some 640* kilometers south of Newfoundland, Canada. (泰坦尼克号于 1912 年 4 月 14 日撞上冰山后沉没, 船上约 1500 名乘客和船员丧生。泰坦尼克号沉没于距加拿大纽芬兰以南约 640 公里

的大约 4000 米的深海里。

- b. For “good”, the Chinese worked out a combination of “woman” and “child”. Once this combination process had started, there was no limit to it. The Chinese still use the system today, having developed it to the point of producing *some forty thousand* combined characters out of a few hundred original pictures of concrete objects. (用几百个象形文字创造出多达 4000 左右的组合字。)

3) some 可与单数可数名词连用, 这时 some 表示不确定的“某一个”、“未知的”意思。它往往暗示缺乏兴趣或蔑视。例如:

- a. Of the many ways of getting to prison, Soapy thought the best was to eat a big meal at *some good restaurant*.
- b. A mirage is an atmospheric optical illusion of *some* object.
海市蜃楼是某个物体的奇特的光学幻影而已。
- c. *Some* person at the gate is asking to see you. 门口有个人要见你。
- d. —“Two buttons have been off my new jacket.” 我那件新夹克已经掉了两粒扣子了。
—“*Some* bargain.” 什么破烂货!
- e. I don't want to spend my life in *some* lonely little village.
我可不想把自己的一生消磨在一个偏僻的小山村里。

97. 个体形容词 each/every

相同点:

each 和 every 后面都只能接单数可数名词。如我们说: every/each boy, 而不说: every/each boys。此时若作主语, 句子谓语动词显然要用单数。例如:

- a. Every boy/Each boy *has* a gift.

- b. *Every man* is the master of his own fortune. 每一个人都是自己命运的主宰。

不同点：(这是主要的)

- 1. 二者最重要的区别是：*each* 不仅用作限定词，而且可用作代词；而 *every* 只能用作限定词。因此 *each* 用作代词可以单独使用，而 *every* 只能与名词连用，不能单独使用。如上句可改为：

- a. *Each* has a gift. (人人都有礼物)

却不能说：*Every* has a gift.

注意下面句子的结构和用法：

- b. *Every boy/Each boy has* a gift. (*each* 用作限定词)

- c. *Each of the boys has* a gift. (*each* 用作代词，加 *of* 短语。此时 *of* 后面须加限定词然后再接名词复数。不能说：*each of boys*，而要说：*each of these/the/my boys*)

- d. *Each* has a gift. (*each* 用作代词)

- e. *Every one of the boys has* a gift. (*every* 不能单独使用。而且与 *of* 短语连用时，只能是 *every one of...*，而不能说：*everyone of...*)

- f. *The boys each have* a gift. (*each* 用作代词，可跟在主语后面。此时谓语动词用复数。)

- g. *The boys have a gift each.* (*each* 用作代词也可放在句末。)

- h. *I give the boys each a gift.* (*each* 用作代词也可放在间接宾语后面。)

- 2. 在意思上来者，二者有两点区别。

- 1) *each* 可以用来指两个或两个以上的事物；而 *every* 却总是

指三个或三个以上的事物，不能指两个。例如：

a. *Each sex* has its own physical and psychological characteristics. (性别就男和女两种，故不能说：*Every sex...*)

男女各有其生理上和心理上的特点。

b. There are a lot of trees on *each* side of the street. (街道只有两边，故不能说：*every side*)

2) 尽管 *each* 和 *every* 都可作“每一个”讲，但两者意思并不完全一样。*Every* 强调整体，相当于 *all* 的意思；而 *each* 则表示个别的概念。当我们用 *each* 时，我们强调的是一个一个不同的人或事物。例如：

a. We want *every* student to succeed in the exam. (强调整体，所有的)

b. *Each* student has his own personal dream in his mind.
(强调个体差别)

不过这种区别，有时并不那么强调，所以一般说来，我们还是可以将 *each* 和 *every* 通用。

► 3. *every* 可与数词连用然后再加复数名词，而 *each* 一般不这么用。例如：

every two days: 每两天/每隔一天

every other day: 每隔一天

every four years/every fourth year: 每隔三年/每四年

In the United States, presidential elections are held once *every four years*.

► 4. 与 *of* 短语连用

见下面表格：

None + of 短语	No one 不接 of 短语	<i>Everyone</i> is here.
Someone	Some one	不说: <i>Every one</i> is here.
Anyone 不接 of 短语	Any one + of 短语	<i>Every one of</i> us has a gift.
Everyone	Every one	<i>None of</i> us has a gift.

98. 个体形容词 another/other

- 1. 从与名词搭配来看, another 只能与单数可数名词连用, 表示不确定的“另一个”, “再一个”。如: another day, 而不说: another days, another water (可以说 another cup of water)。

然而, other 可与单数或复数可数名词以及不可数名词连用, 表示不确定的“另外的”, “其余的”人或物。如: other boys, the other boy, other fish。

- 2. 从与数词搭配来看, 注意二者词序上的差别:

(1) another + 数词 + 复数名词

(2) 数词 + other + 复数名词

例如:

another three days: 不说 three another days

three other days: 不说 other three days

我们还应该注意这两种用法的意思区别。当我们说 I will stay here for another three days, 意思是“我还要在这里再呆三天”。言外之意, 我已经在这里呆过一段时日了, 现在还得再加上三天。也即“another + 数词 + 名词复数”这一结构的基本意思是“在原有基础上的一个延续”。

而 three other days 意思却完全不同, 比如我们说 I am always busy from Monday to Thursday, but I can come on three other days. 意思是“我其他三天 (Friday, Saturday and Sunday)

能来”，所以“three other days”并不像“another three days”那样具有一种“累加延续”的效果，而只是单纯地表示“其他的…，另外的…”。

另外，与“another + 数词 + 名词复数”这一结构意思相同的另一种结构是：“数词 + more + 复数名词”，比如我们可以说：three more days（不能说 three other days）。

总结如下：

another *three* days （还有三天）

three more days （还有三天）

three other days （其他三天）

最后顺便提及的是，从以上我们可知，虽然 another 不能直接与复数名词连用，但其后可以先接数词或 few 然后再接复数名词。如：*another few weeks/a few more weeks*（还有几个星期），*another few boys/a few more boys*（又有几个男孩）。

a. —“What do you do when you realize that you are about to die?”

b. —“It's real simple. You get things right with God, and you spend as much time with those you love as you can. Then you settle up with everybody else. You know, really, you ought to live every day like you have *only a few more* days to live.”

► 3. other 本身的其他用法。

1) other 之前可以有其他限定词修饰。如：some, any, every, one/two/three, no, many, his/my/their…等。例如：

a. Can you give me *some other* reference books? 你能否给我一些其他的参考书?

b. *Every other* day: 每隔一天（相当于 every two days）

c. *No other* tools: 其他的工具没有了

d. Have you got **any other** colors? 你这里有别的颜色吗?

2) other/the other

“other + 名词”表示不确定的“其他的…，另外的…”；“the other + 名词”表示特定的“剩下其余的…”。例如：

a. Some metals are magnetic and other metals are not.

b. Of all metals, only mercury is liquid and the other metals are solid.

3) other/others

other 只能作限定词来用，后面必须接名词，不能说：Other are...；与此相反，others 只能用作代词，后面不能再接名词，不能说：others people are...。

99. 个体形容词 either/neither

(这里所讲的用法包括二者做代词时的用法)

► 1. 从词义角度分析，这两个词的词义不同。

either 有两个意思：

either 的基本意思是“两个当中的任何一个”，“这个或那个 (one or the other)”。例如：

Come over on Saturday or Sunday. Either day is OK. (这两天中的哪一天都行)

either 有时候也指“两个中的每一个 (each of two)”，特别是与 end 和 side 连用时。

例如：

There are a lot of trees on **either side** of the river. 河的两岸都种满了树。

比较：There are a lot of trees on **both sides** of the river.

(side 要用复数)

还可以说: There are a lot of trees on *each side* of the river.

(each 可指两者或两者以上)

但不可以说: There are a lot of trees on *every side* of the river. (every 指三者或三者以上)

Neither 只有一个意思: “两者都不 (not one and not the other)”

Neither of the answers is right. 两个答案都不正确。

► 2. 从与名词搭配来看, 二者的结构用法相同。具体如下:

1) 用作限定词时, 总是与单数可数名词连用, 谓语动词用单数。

Either day is OK. (不说: ... *are* OK) 两天中的哪一天都行。

Neither day is OK. (不说: ... *are* OK) 两天中的哪一天都不行。

注意: 作限定词时, 二者均不能再与其他的限定词 (如冠词、物主代词或指示形容词) 连用。比如我们可以说 the book, your book, 或 either book, 但我们不说: the either book, either your book, the either day.

2) 用作代词时, 二者不直接接名词, 而是单独使用或接 of 短语。例如:

Come over on Saturday or Sunday. *Either* is OK.

You can't choose Choices A and B. *Neither* is right. 选项 A 和 B 你都不能选, 两个都不对。

注意它们与 of 短语连用时的结构: “Either/Neither of + 限定词 (如冠词、物主代词或指示形容词) + 名词复数 + 单数谓语动词”。例如:

Either of *the* answers *is* right. 两个答案中任一个都是正确的。

Neither of my children has done that. 我的两个孩子都没有做这件事。

在这个结构中三点须注意：

(1) 名词前面必须有限定词。我们不说：either of answers, neither of children

(2) 名词必须用复数。我们不说：either of the answer, neither of my child

(3) 谓语动词通常用单数。我们一般不说：Either of the answers *are* right. Neither of my children *have* done that.

► 3. Either...not 相当于 neither

例如：

a. Either of the answers is not correct. 两个答案都不对。

b. Neither of the answers is correct. 两个答案都不对。

至于其他的限定词如基数词和序数词 (one/first, two/second, three/third), 指示形容词 (this, that, these, those), 物主形容词 (my, your, his, her, our, their) 及名词属格 (Mary's, John's, his father's), 其用法较为简单, 故不再赘述。

第二节 限定词的搭配

100. 限定词与名词的搭配

各种限定词与不同“数”的名词搭配一般应遵循以下规则：

► 1. 只与单数可数名词搭配的限定词:

a, an, each, either, neither, another, every, one, 等。

► 2. 只与复数可数名词搭配的限定词:

both, few, a few, fewer, a number of, many, several, these, those, 基数词。

► 3. 只与不可数名词搭配的限定词:

little, a little, less, much, a bit of, a great amount/deal of, 等。

► 4. 与不可数名词或复数可数名词均可搭配的限定词:

a lot of, lots of, plenty of, more, most,

► 5. 与单数可数名词、复数可数名词和不可数名词均可搭配的限定词:

any, some, no, the, 物主形容词 (your, my...), 名词属格 (Tom's, my mother's)

101. 限定词之间的位置搭配 (三种限定词)

根据限定词在名词前的位置关系, 我们把限定词区分为三类: 前位限定词 (Pre-determiner)、中位限定词 (Central Determiner) 和后位限定词 (Post-determiner)。例如:

	前位限定词	中位限定词	后位限定词	名词
I met	all	my	many	Friends
They questioned	both	the	last two	boys

► 1. 前位限定词:

1) 种类:

前位限定词主要是用来说明名词的数量,主要有三种:

①表示倍数关系的数量形容词。例如:

half my salary

twice my salary

double my salary

three times my salary

②表示几分之几的数词。例如:

one third my salary

two-thirds my salary

③个体形容词:all and both

all my salary

both my salaries

2) 共存性:

前位限定词一般互相排斥,不能共存。例如我们不能说:

all half my salary

half double her income

► 2. 中位限定词:

1) 种类:

①冠词:the, a, an

all the book, half an hour, twice the size

②物主形容词: my, your, his, her, our, their

all my money, all his money

③指示形容词: this, that, these, those

all these problems, twice that size, four times this amount

④名词属格:

John's, his father's

2) 共存性:

中位限定词亦彼此排斥, 不能同时出现。例如我们不能说:

my the money

our these problems

► 3. 后位限定词:

1) 种类:

①基数词或序数词: one/first, two/second, three/third, four/fourth, 等等。

the two children

his fourth birthday

②一般序数词: next, last, past, previous, subsequent, other, another, 等。

my next plan

our last meeting

your previous mistakes

her subsequent response

③数量形容词: few, many, several, little, less, more, 等。

my many friends

our several achievements

the few friends that I have

2) 共存性:

不同于相互排斥的前位和中位限定词，后位限定词可以同时出现在名词前，

my next two plans

several other people

但也有先后顺序问题：

①序数词/一般序数词 + 基数词：the first two weeks, during the next 50 years

②序数词/一般序数词 + 数量形容词：during the past few years

102. 限定词与形容词的区别

尽管限定词和形容词都可以用在名词前面来修饰名词，但二者在性质和用法上都存在着很大的差别。

- 1. 限定词用以限定名词所指的范围，对名词起泛指或特指、定量或不定量等限定修饰作用。而形容词则是用来表示名词的性质、特征。例如：

many/few/his children

naughty/lovely/clever children

- 2. 限定词一般不用作表语（少数表示数量的限定词 few, many, much 除外），而绝大多数形容词都可用作表语。

- 3. 除了 few, little, many, much 外，限定词没有比较级和最高级形式，大多数形容词有比较级和最高级形式。

- 4. 限定词总是位于名词之前，而形容词作定语时，有的可置于被修饰词之后。例如：

this/his/Tom's/every/the book

a kind woman, a handsome guy, a clever boy

the secretary *general*, the attorney *general*, something *interesting*, the notary *public*, the president *elect*.

温故知新：In Brief

本章主要讨论了数量形容词和个体形容词这两种限定词的用法。读者要重点掌握它们所接名词的区别，比如：other 可接任何名词，而 another 却只接单数可数名词等。

另外还要了解不同限定词之间的位置关系。

第十一章 限定词练习

11.1 单项选择 (综合练习):

1. I broke the vase, so I have to buy _____.
A. the other one
B. another one
C. the other
D. other
2. I have to get _____ about the subject before I write the paper.
A. a few more information
B. more a little information
C. a little more information
D. little more information
3. He works harder than _____ in his class.
A. anyone
B. any one else
C. any other student
D. any another student
4. When the children entered, _____ was given a present.
A. each
B. every
C. all
D. both
5. Sleep is divided into periods of so-called REM sleep, characterized by rapid eye movements and dreaming, and longer periods of so-called non-REM. _____ kind of sleep

- is at all well-understood.
- A. Either
 - B. Neither
 - C. Each
 - D. Any
6. _____ ballet dancers learn five basic positions for the arms and feet.
- A. All of
 - B. Of every
 - C. All
 - D. Every
7. She spent _____ on clothes.
- A. her all earnings
 - B. her all earning
 - C. all her earnings
 - D. all her earning
8. _____ all rainwater falling from a cloud reaches the ground; some of it is lost through evaporation.
- A. Nowhere
 - B. Not
 - C. No
 - D. None
9. _____ mechanical device has ever been invented that can satisfactorily replace teasel flower heads for raising the nap on cloth.
- A. No
 - B. Not the
 - C. Never has a
 - D. There is no

10. Jupiter, the closest of the giant planets to Earth, has _____ solid surface and is surrounded by zones of intense radiation.
- A. not
 - B. no
 - C. nor
 - D. neither
11. _____ social crusade aroused Elizabeth Williams' enthusiasm more than the expansion of educational facilities for immigrants to the United States.
- A) No
 - B) Nothing
 - C) Not
 - D) None
12. Nebraska has floods in some years, _____.
- A. in others drought
 - B. droughts are others
 - C. while other droughts
 - D. others in drought
13. I have two sons but _____ of them likes English.
- A. both
 - B. neither
 - C. none
 - D. either
14. No agreement was reached in the discussion, as neither side would give way to _____.
- A. the other
 - B. any other
 - C. another

- D. other
15. _____ the teachers came on the trip.
A. Neither of
B. Nobody of
C. None
D. No one of
16. I have classes _____ day, Mondays, Wednesdays and Fridays.
A. each other
B. every other
C. one another
D. all other
17. Ed and Jim have arrived, but _____ in the class aren't here yet.
A. other
B. others
C. the others
D. the other
18. John, Peter and Bill _____ have obtained a reward.
A. each
B. every
C. every one
D. both
19. These books, which you can get at any bookshop, will give you _____ you need.
A. all the information
B. all the informations
C. all of information
D. all of the informations

20. It is reported that _____ adopted children want to know who their natural parents are.
- the most
 - most of
 - most
 - the most of
21. Radio, televisions and press _____ of conveying news and information.
- are the most three common means
 - are the most common three means
 - are the three most common means
 - are three the most common means
22. The Grapes of Wrath, a novel about the Depression years of the 1930's, is one of John Steinbeck's _____ books.
- most famous
 - the most famous
 - are most famous
 - and most famous
23. The letter was short because there wasn't _____.
- many news
 - much news
 - a lot news
 - a lot of news
24. _____ people left early.
- A lot
 - A few
 - A little
 - Less
25. He doesn't have _____ money.

A. much

B. many

C. a few

D. little

26. There _____ bad news on television tonight.

A. is too much

B. are too much

C. is too many

D. are too many

11.2 辨别改错:

27. Since the 1950's, folk music has had a significant

A

B

influence on many popular vocal and instrumental mu-
sic.

C

D

28. For hundreds of years, sailors relied on echoes to warn

A

them of another ships, icebergs, or cliffs in
foggy weather.

B

C

D

29. Polar bears are bowlegged and pigeon-toed, adaptations

A

that enable this massive animals to maintain their balance
as they walk.

B

C

D

30. Rarely has a technological development had as great an

A

impact on as much aspects of social, economic, and cul-
B

- tural development as the growth of electronics.
C D
31. Cloud droplets and ice crystals first form on certain
A
types of small particles of dust or another airborne mate-
B C D
rials.
32. Yogurt contains a higher percentage of lactic acid than
A B
another fermented milks.
C D
33. Almost every fruits and vegetables contain riboflavin;
A
the richest sources are leafy green vegetables such as
B C D
spinach, kale, or turnip greens.
34. Before the formation of labor unions, individual workers
A B
had almost not voice in determining their wages, hours,
C
or working conditions.
D
35. The factory is experimenting with a new kind of drug
A B
that will have less side effects.
C D
36. Fewer people reside in Newfoundland than in other any
A B C
Canadian province except Prince Edward Island.
D
37. The Texas Panhandle region, in the northwestern part of
A B
the state, produces more wheat, cotton, and grain
C

sorghum than any of other area of Texas.

D

38. Seven of planets rotate in the same direction as their or-
A B
 bital motions, while Venus and Uranus rotate in the
C
opposite direction.

D

39. Because the tachinid fly is a parasite of harmful insects,
A
much species have been imported into the United States
B C
to combat insect pests.

D

40. Migration of animals may be initiated by physiological
A
stimuli such as reproductive changes, external pressures
B
 such as weather changes, or a combination of either
C D
 types of changes.

41. Bacteria are either plants nor animals, but are
A
single-celled organisms that reproduce most commonly
B C
through binary fission.

D

42. Sagebrush flourishes in the dry soil of the western plains,
A B C
 where other many plants cannot grow.

D

43. None two butterflies have exactly the same design on
A B C D
 their wings.

- 288

第十一章 限定词练习答案

11.1 单项选择 (综合练习):

1. B 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. C 7. C 8. B 9. A 10. B
11. A 12. A 13. B 14. A 15. A 16. B 17. C 18. A
19. A 20. C 21. C 22. A 23. B 24. B 25. A 26. A

11.2 辨别改错:

27. D/much
28. C/other
29. B/these
30. B/many
31. D/other
32. C/other
33. A/all
34. C/no
35. C/fewer
36. C/any other
37. D/any
38. A/of the planets
39. B/many
40. D/both
41. A/neither
42. D/many other
43. A/no
44. D/other
45. B/most

主谓一致

主谓一致即指主语和谓语在人称和数上需保持一致的关系。即主语是单数，谓语动词用单数形式；主语是复数，谓语动词用复数形式。说起来非常简单，但在实际应用当中却是相当复杂的。本章就试图对这一问题作一总结，以便大家能准确地使用。

10.3. 单数形式的名词作主语与谓语动词形式的关系

一般来说，单数名词作主语，谓语动词用单数形式，这符合英语中的语法上一致原则。但此种情况也有例外。现详细归纳如下：

► 1. Many a + 名词单数，虽为复数概念，但谓语用单数。

- a. Many a boy and girl **has** made such a funny experiment.
- b. There **is** many an error that he has neglected.
- c. Many a man and (many a) woman **has** wished that he or she had had a better education. (Many men and women **have**...)

- 2. More than one + 可数名词单数, 是复数概念, 但谓语用单数。

a. There *is* more than one answer to this question.

b. More than one topic *has* been discussed at the meeting.

与此类似的另外一个结构: more + 复数名词 + than one, 谓语用复数。

a. More *topics* than one *have* been discussed at the meeting.

b. More *persons* than one *were* killed.

- 3. a + 单数名词 + or two 作主语, 谓语用单数

One or two + 复数名词, 谓语用复数。

a. A word or two *is* misused in the sentence.

b. One or two words *are* misused in the sentence.

- 4. 对于集体名词, 如: party、crowd、class、team、family、crew、government、committee、audience、public 等, 则需视情况而定:

a. 若集体名词被看成一个整体, 则用单数谓语。

b. 若集体名词被看成是由具体若干成员组成的, 则用复数谓语。

试比较:

The public *is* the best judge.

The public *are* requested to write down their names in this book.

He has joined the football team who *are* all famous footballers.

A football team which *keeps* on training hard *is* more likely to win.

- { The committee *was* made up of ten members.
- { The committee *were* unanimous in their opinion.
- { The committee *are* not of one opinion.
- { The committee who *were* responsible for it *were* all punished.
- { The committee which *was* responsible for it *was* dissolved.
- { There *was* a large audience in the great hall.
- { The audience *were* excited.

但集体名词: police、militia (民兵)、cattle、people 等总是接复数动词, 而 mankind、humanity 接单数动词。

Police in Guangdong Province *are* investigating an organized cheating operation in Dianbai County of the province during national college entrance exams.

► 5. 定冠词 the + adj. 或过去分词

- (1) 若表示抽象概念, 谓语用单数。(见 a, b, c 句)
- (2) 表示一类人, 则为复数概念, 谓语用复数。(见 d, e 句)
- (3) 有时需根据上下文来判断。(见 f, g 句)
- a. The good in him *overweighs* the bad. (抽象概念) 他身上的优点比缺点多。
- b. The best *is* yet to come. 好戏还在后头。
- c. The beautiful *is* not always the same as the good.
- d. The blind *are* unfortunate.
- e. The oppressed *are* to rise one day.
- f. The deceased *was* his mother. (表示单个人)
- g. The deceased *were* ten farmers.

104. 复数形式的名词作主语与谓语动词形式的关系

这种情况下, 谓语动词形式不能一概而论。不过一条基本原

则是：

(1) 若复数形式的名词表示的是复数概念，则显然要接复数谓语；

(2) 若复数形式的名词表示的是单数概念，或将其看成一个整体部分，则用单数谓语。

这么说来，在这种情况下，我们主要采用意义一致的原则来判断主谓一致。

- 1. 常见的表示成对概念的复数名词，如：pants, trousers, scissors, scales (天平), glasses, binoculars (双筒望远镜), spectacles (护目镜), bifocals (双光眼镜)。谓语动词用复数。

Where are my glasses?

- 2. 形式上是复数（词尾加 s），但表示单数概念的词，谓语用单数。

Works (工厂)、gallows (绞刑架)、politics、statistics、measles、diabetes

a. Politics is often a popular topic among people.

b. Statistics is a science.

但若 politics、statistics 不表示学科，而分别表示“政治观点”、“统计数据”时，则需用复数。

Statistics prove that...

What are your politics?

As far as I am concerned, his politics *are* rather conservative compared with other politicians'.

► 3. 表示时间、重量、数额的复数名词作主语，我们通常将它们看成一个整体，故谓语用单数。

- a. Ten years is a moment in history.
- b. One hundred dollars is a large sum for the poor.
- c. Two tons is enough.
- d. The difference between America and England is, the English think 100 miles is a long distance and Americans think 100 years is a long time.

值得注意的是，若“数词”单用，表示人或物，谓语动词一般用复数。

- a. Ten were killed and five were missing and several were severely wounded in that accident.
- b. Few know the fact.

► 4. 复数的专有名词后面都接复数谓语动词：

- a. The Himalayas are the roof of the world.
- b. The Great Lakes are a series of five lakes between the USA and Canada.
- c. The Niagara Falls are the falls on the Niagara River.

不过较特殊的有：the United Nations、the United States 均看作一个整体，故用单数谓语动词。

105. 并列主语与谓语动词形式的关系

► 1. 由 and 连接的多个成分，若表示一种事物或一种概念时，用单数动词；若表示的是多个不同的概念时，则用复数动词。

- a. The writer and translator is delivering a speech in our col-

- lege tonight. (writer 和 translator 是指同一个人)
- b. The writer and *the* translator *are* delivering a speech in our college tonight. (此处指两个人)
- c. The tenth and last lesson is translated by him. (同一课)
- d. The tenth and *the* last lesson *are* translated by him. (两个不同的课)
- e. A black and *a* white dog *are* playing in the yard. (两只狗)
- f. A black and white dog *is* playing in the yard. (一只狗)
- g. The assistant and graduate student _____ check the exercise books.
- A. help
- B. helping
- C. helps
- D. to help

正确答案:C。

- h. Sound, heat and light *are* different forms of energy.

- 2. 若 and 连接两个并列主语, 且 and 后面的名词有相关的副词 (not, perhaps, particularly, even, too, likewise, as well 等) 修饰, 则谓语动词形式与 and 前面的名词保持一致。因为此时句子真正的主语应是 and 前面的名词, 此时 and 与前面的名词之间常有逗号隔开。

- a. The horse and *not* the donkey *is* used in games of racing.
- b. Tom, and *not* Jim, *has* gone there.
- c. That the sun and *not* the earth *is* the center of our planetary system was a difficult concept to grasp in the Middle Ages.
- d. Jack, and *perhaps* Williams, *has* been there.
- e. Jack, and *particularly* his parents, *is* fond of this music.

f. His parents, and *particularly* Jack, *are* fond of this music.

- 3. 两个表示不同物质的名词，虽由 *and* 连接，但习惯上此两样东西常常被同时使用，这时我们将二者看作是一整体，故谓语动词仍用单数。常见的这样的名词有：
-

- a. *Bread and butter is* my favorite breakfast.
- b. *Apple pie and ice cream is* the favorite dessert of many people.
- c. The *fork and knife is* hard for me to use.
- d. The *wheel and axle is* a rotating lever. 轮轴是一个转动杆。
- e. That *cup and saucer is* made from a kind of rare porcelain.
- f. A *needle and thread is* what he needs now.

- 4. *or* 连接的并列主语，动词形式与 *or* 最靠近的主语保持一致。
-

- a. He or *I am* to go.
- b. Her sisters or *his brother has* a hobby of collecting stamps.
- c. John, Mike, or *Noriko drives* Paula to work each morning.
- d. An erupting volcano or an earthquake sometimes *affects* the feature of the surrounding region and can even cause lakes to disappear.

- 5. *every... and (every)... each..., and (each)..., any... and (any)..., no... and (no)..., many a ... and (many a) ...* 连接的并列主语，用单数谓语动词。
-

- a. Every hour and every minute *is* important.

- b. Every man, woman and child *is* an important being.
- c. Every boy and girl *has* to have *his* hair neatly combed.
(用 *his* 作物主代词)
- d. Many a man and (many a) woman *has* wished he or she had had a better education.
- e. Here is a message of importance to every man and woman who _____.
A. votes
B. vote
C. voting
D. are voting

正确答案:A。

► 6. either...or..., not only...but also..., neither...nor..., 谓语动词单复数与 or、but (also)、nor 后面的词一致。

- a. Not only the students but also *their teacher is* required to attend the meeting.
- b. Not only their teacher but also *the students are* required to attend the meeting.

► 7. 与第六点形成对照的是, “主语 + with, together with, along with, as well as, as much as, including, in addition to, added to, except, besides, rather than, accompanied by + 另一主语” 的结构中, 谓语动词形式与第一个主语保持人称和数的一致。

- a. *Mary*, along with her sisters, *attends* the sessions regularly.
- b. The *students* as well as the teacher *are* required to attend

the meeting.

c. *I*, as well as they, *am* ready to help you.

106. 在 of 结构中谓语动词的单复数

这类情况较为复杂，且不总是那么具有规律性。基本可归纳如下：

► 1. 像 kind, type, sort, class, species, breed, variety, form, brand, make 等表示类别的名词，总的规律是：句子谓语动词单复数与 of 前面的名词形式保持一致。

- a. What kind of rice is served in that restaurant?
- b. This kind of apple is sour.
- c. The kind of apples *is* sour.
- d. *Apples* of this kind *are* sour.
- e. What *kinds* of rice *are* served in that restaurant?

► 2. A pair of + 复数名词，看作整体，用单数谓语动词。

- a. A *pair* of gloves / glasses *is* on the table.

但是：

- b. *Five pairs* of gloves *are* on sale.

► 3. the + 最高级 + of + n. 复数 + 单数谓语…

The most elaborate of all bird nests *is* the large, doomed communal structure built by social weaverbirds.

- 4. A number of
An average of +
A total of } 名词复数, 用复数动词, 强调数量

the number / average / total of + 名词复数, 用单数动词, 强调整体。

- a. A total of ten thousand dollars **were** donated last month.
- b. An average of ten thousand dollars a day **are** sent by this post office.
- c. The total of dollars donated last month **was** 100,000 dollars
- d. The total of 10 thousand dollars donated last month **was** sent to the flood-stricken areas.
- e. It is said that **the average number** of moles a person has is fourteen. Moles can appear on almost any part of the body, including the scalp. “据说, 人体黑痣的平均数目在十四颗左右, 而且人体的任何部位都可能长痣, 甚至是头皮里。

- 5. A part of + { 单数名词→单数谓语
复数名词→复数谓语

与此类似的还有: the rest / remainder of, most of, plenty of, 分数 (如 two-thirds) + of, 百分数 + of 等等。它们的谓语动词数依of后名词而定, 名词是单数, 则谓语动词为单数; 名词若是复数, 谓语动词亦为复数。

- a. A part of the **apple is** bad.
- b. A part of the **apples are** bad.
- c. Three-fourths of the **surface of the earth is** covered with water.

- d. A third of *his composition* *has* been corrected.
- e. A third of their *compositions* *have* been corrected.
- f. Three-fourths of the *people are* illiterate.

107. 从句中的主谓一致问题

(名词从句、动名词短语或动词不定式短语作主语，用单数谓语动词)

► 1. 主语从句或短语作主语，主句谓语用单数。

- a. *Children interfering in* their parents' right to remarry *has* become a social problem. (主语是动名词复合结构)
- b. When I can complete it is still unclear.
- c. What I said and did *is* of no concern to you.
- d. How close parents are to their children ____ a strong influence on the character of the children. (95-6 CET-4)
 A. have
 B. has
 C. having
 D. to have

正确答案:B。

► 2. 定语从句中的主谓一致

请认真比较下列例句

- a. One of those men *likes* to drive fast.
- b. He is *the only one* of those men who *likes* to drive fast.
- c. He is one of *those men* who *like* to drive fast.
- d. He is one of the *only men* who *like* to drive fast.

e. One of those men *who like* to drive fast is her son.

温故知新: In Brief

对于主谓一致，关键是首先要区分不同形式的主语，这也是本章的写作思路，比如短语作主语，并列主语，复数形式的名词作主语等等。认清了主语的形式，然后依照各自规则来判断谓语的单复数。

第十二章 主谓一致练习

12.1 单项选择 (综合练习):

1. The police _____ making inquiries about the accident.
A. is
B. are
2. The cattle _____ grazing in the meadows.
A. is
B. are
3. One thousand pounds _____ a small sum to run a factory.
A. is
B. are
4. The singer and dancer _____ attend our evening.
A. is to
B. are to
5. The public _____ requested not to leave cigarette ends in these woods.
A. is
B. are
6. The police _____ the prisoner's statements by questioning several witnesses.
A. are verifying
B. is verifying
C. are verified
D. is verified
7. She says more than one _____ dismissed from this company.

- A. have been
B. are
C. has been
D. had been
8. More than half of those committing murder and violent assaults _____ alcohol immediately before the crime.
A. have been consumed
B. have consumed
C. has been consumed
D. has consumed
9. In the last few years, intensive design and development effort _____ to the introduction of electronic exchanges.
A. have been applied
B. has been applied
C. is being applied
D. would be applied
10. The greater part of the lower grade students in our university _____ to achieve the norm on the reading tests.
A. was unable
B. was to be unable
C. were unable
D. being unable
11. She as well as the other students _____ how to install this electric equipment.
A. has learned
B. are learning
C. have learned
D. are to learn
12. Beef cattle _____ of all livestock for economic growth in

- certain geographic regions.
- A. the most are important
 - B. are the most important
 - C. is the most important
 - D. that are most important
13. _____ in the desert is mainly due to the limited supply of desert water.
- A. Plants are widely spaced
 - B. The spacing of plants is wide
 - C. Plants to be spaced widely
 - D. The wide spacing of plants
14. Most electronic devices of this kind, _____ manufactured for such purposes, are tightly packed.
- A. that are
 - B. as are
 - C. which is
 - D. what are
15. Neither of the young men who had applied for position in the university _____. (9801 CET - 4)
- A. has been accepted
 - B. have been accepted
 - C. was accepted
 - D. were accepted
16. The growth of part-time and flexible working patterns, and of training and retraining schemes, _____ more women to take advantage of employment opportunities. (2000 - 6 CET - 4)
- A. have allowed
 - B. allow

- C. allowing
D. allows
17. How close parents are to their children _____ a strong influence on the character of the children. (95 - 6 CET - 4)
A. have
B. has
C. having
D. to have
18. Here is a message of importance to every man and woman who _____.
A. votes
B. vote
C. voting
D. are voting
19. The basketball team _____ baths now.
A. has
B. have
C. is having
D. are having
20. Statistics _____ one of the subjects that I study.
A. are
B. is
C. were
D. was
21. _____ already been interviewed.
A. A number of applicants have
B. A number of applicants has
C. The number of applicants have
D. The number of applicants has

22. There _____ telephone calls today.
- A. has been a number of
- B. have been a number of
- C. has been the number of
- D. have been the number of
23. _____ dull.
- A. This scissors are
- B. These scissors is
- C. This pair of scissors is
- D. This pair of scissors are
24. The number of doctors in our country _____ greatly increased since liberation.
- A. has
- B. have
- C. are
- D. is

12.2 辨别改错:

25. One of the most difficult questions in defining sleep is
A B C
“what is the functions of sleep?”
D
26. It is the interaction between people, rather than the
A B
events that occur in their lives, that are the main focus
C
of social psychology.
D
27. One of the wildest and most inaccessible parts of the U-
A B

- nited States are the Everglades where wildlife is abundant and largely protected.
- C
D
28. Despite much research, there are still certain elements in the life cycle of the insect that is not fully understood.
- A
B
C
D
29. The tapir, an odd-toed, hoofed mammal, feed on plants, eating such things as grass, leaves, fallen fruit, and moss in large quantities.
- A
B
C
D
30. The weeds and tall grass in that yard makes the house look as if it had been vacant for quite some time.
- A
B
C
D
31. Just outside the ruins are a magnificent building surrounded by tall trees.
- A
B
C
D
32. The amount of pressure which the materials are subject to affect the quality of the products.
- A
B
C
D
33. Nearly 75 percent of the land of the Canadian province of British Columbia are covered by forests.
- A
B
C
D
34. Australian koalas are furry, gray animal that live in trees and feed on leaves.
- A
B
C
D

35. Pollen can be transferred by the wind or by birds
A
that comes into contact with flowers.
B C D
36. Usually an atom having one, two, or three electrons in
A
its valence band readily contributes electrons to and
B
receive electrons from neighboring atoms.
C D
37. The wingspread of various species of bats range from
A B
over five feet to less than two inches.
C D
38. The hind leg of the gerbil are particularly well adapted to
A B
leaping across its desert habitat.
C D
39. A change in direction of the monsoon winds result from
A
the differences between the heating or cooling of land-
B C
masses and that of oceans.
D
40. In some areas of the United States, unfavorable climate
A
or soil make farming an impossible task.
B C D
41. The structure or behavior of many protozoans are
A B
amazingly complex for single-celled animals.
C D
42. Intelligence, education, and experience all helps shape
A B C

management style.

D

43. There are many valuable services which the public are

A

willing to pay for, but which does not bring a return

B

C

in money to the community.

D

44. Beneath the deep oceans that cover two-thirds of the

A

B

Earth, intriguing secret of the planet are concealed.

C

D

45. The early periods of aviation in the United States was

A

marked by exhibition flights made by individual fliers or

B

C

by teams of performers at country fairs.

D

46. Alaska's vast areas of untamed wilderness attracts many

A

B

C

people who enjoy the outdoors.

D

47. Instead of teeth, the blue whale had a row of bony plates

A

B

in its mouth that function as a food-collecting device.

C

D

第十二章 主谓一致练习答案

12.1 单项选择 (综合练习):

1. B 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B 6. A 7. C 8. B 9. B 10. C
11. A 12. B 13. D 14. B 15. C 16. D 17. B 18. A
19. D 20. B 21. A 22. B 23. C 24. A

12.2 辨别改错:

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------|
| 25. D/are | 26. C/that is |
| 27. C/is | 28. C/that are |
| 29. A/feeds | 30. B/make |
| 31. B/is | 32. D/affects |
| 33. D/is | 34. A/animals |
| 35. B/that come | 36. C/receives |
| 37. B/ranges | 38. A/legs |
| 39. A/results | 40. B/and |
| 41. A/and | 42. C. help |
| 43. C/do not bring | 44. C/secrets |
| 45. A/period of aviation | 46. C/attract |
| 47. D/functions | |

[G e n e r a l I n f o r m a t i o n]

书名 = 英语语法新思维中级教程：通悟语法

作者 =

页数 = 3 1 0

S S 号 = 0

出版日期 =

V s s 号 = 7 0 4 8 0 4 2 6

封面页
书名页
版权页
前言页
目录页
第一章

英语句子分析

- 1 . 主语 + 谓语动词 (+ 状语)
- 2 . 主语 + 系动词 + 主语补足语 (也称作表语)
- 3 . 主语 + 谓语 + 宾语
- 4 . 主语 + 谓语 + 双宾语
- 5 . 主语 + 谓语 + 宾语 + 复合宾语
- 6 . 陈述句
- 7 . 疑问句
- 8 . 祈使句
- 9 . 感叹句

第二章 名词从句

- 1 0 . 四类名词从句
- 1 1 . 三种句子来充当四种成分
- 1 2 . 陈述句可分别充当四种句子成分
- 1 3 . 一般疑问句可分别充当四种句子成分
- 1 4 . 特殊疑问句可分别充当四种句子成分

第三章 定语从句

- 1 5 . 定语从句概说
- 1 6 . 先行词指人, 用关系代词 *w h o* , *w h o m*
- 1 7 . 表示人或物的所有关系, 用 *w h o s e*
- 1 8 . 先行词指物, 用关系代词 *w h i c h*
- 1 9 . *t h a t* 可以指代人, 也可以指代物
- 2 0 . 在从句中作宾语的关系代词可以省去
- 2 1 . *w h e n* 的用法
- 2 2 . *w h e r e* 的用法
- 2 3 . *w h y* 的用法
- 2 4 . 不用逗号隔开——限制性定语从句
- 2 5 . 用逗号隔开——非限制性定语从句
- 2 6 . 用或不用逗号隔开句义有差别
- 2 7 . *t h a t* 引导定语从句和同位语从句的区别

第四章 状语从句

- 2 8 . 状语从句概述
- 2 9 . 状语从句的省略
- 3 0 . 时间状语从句
- 3 1 . 地点状语从句
- 3 2 . 原因状语从句
- 3 3 . 目的与结果状语从句
- 3 4 . 条件状语从句
- 3 5 . 让步状语从句
- 3 6 . 比较状语从句
- 3 7 . 方式状语从句

第五章 时态（一）：完成时态

3 8 . 现在完成时态概述

3 9 . 现在完成时态用法（一）：延续到现在的动作或状态

4 0 . 与现在完成时态搭配的时间状语

4 1 . 现在完成时态用法（二）：过去发生但与现在仍有联系的动作或

状态

4 2 . 第二种现在完成时态使用技巧

4 3 . 现在完成时态用法（三）：到目前的一个时间段内重复发生的动

作

4 4 . 其他使用现在完成时的结构

4 5 . 现在完成时与一般过去时比较

4 6 . 过去完成时

4 7 . 一般过去时与过去完成时的比较

4 8 . 将来完成动作的开始时间

4 9 . 将来完成时

第六章 时态（二）：完成进行时

5 0 . 完成进行时态概述

5 1 . 完成进行用法（一）：到现在仍然在延续的动作

5 2 . 与现在完成时比较（一）

5 3 . 与现在完成时比较（二）

5 4 . 完成进行用法（二）：刚刚结束的动作

5 5 . 完成进行用法（三）：重复发生的动作

5 6 . 与现在完成时比较（三）

5 7 . 与现在完成时比较（四）

5 8 . 过去完成进行时

5 9 . 将来完成进行时

第七章 动词不定式

6 0 . 作主语 “ I t + t o d o s t h 句型 ”

6 1 . 作宾语：动词 + t o d o

6 2 . 作宾语补足语：动词 + s b t o d o s t h

6 3 . 作定语：名词 + t o d o s t h

6 4 . 作独立成分

6 5 . 作目的状语

6 6 . 作结果状语

6 7 . 形容词后的不定式

6 8 . 一些动词的复合宾语中 t o 省去

6 9 . 一些短语句型中 t o 省去

7 0 . D o n o t h i n g / a n y t h i n g / e v e r y t h i

n g b u t d o 句型中 t o 省去

第八章 动名词

7 1 . 用作主语

7 2 . 一些动词后只能用动名词作宾语

7 3 . 接动名词和接动词不定式有区别的动词

7 4 . 其他用动名词的结构

7 5 . 动名词复合结构构成：m y d o i n g / T o m s d o i

n g

	7 6 . 动名词复合语结构用法
第九章	被动语态
	7 7 . 被动语态的构成
	7 8 . 被动语态中的介词 b y 通常不要
	7 9 . 不及物动词没有被动语态
	8 0 . 间接宾语用作被动语态的主语
	8 1 . 静态被动形式
	8 2 . G e t 与被动语态
	8 3 . h a v e / g e t s t h d o n e
第十章	情态动词
	8 4 . 情态动词概述
	8 5 . 表示能力或可能 a b i l i t y / p o s s i b i l i t y
	8 6 . 表示许可 p e r m i s s i o n (给予允许)
	8 7 . 表示请求 r e q u e s t
	8 8 . 表示必须 n e c e s s i t y
	8 9 . 表示忠告 a d v i s a b i l i t y 或责任 o b l i g a t i o
n	
	9 0 . 表示建议 m a k i n g s u g g e s t i o n s
	9 1 . s h a l l 的用法
	9 2 . 表示意愿 v o l i t i o n
	9 3 . 表示过去重复动作 w o u l d / u s e d t o
	9 4 . 表示推测
	9 5 . 情态动词与完成式
第十一章	限定词
	9 6 . 数量形容词 s o m e / a n y
	9 7 . 个体形容词 e a c h / e v e r y
	9 8 . 个体形容词 a n o t h e r / o t h e r
	9 9 . 个体形容词 e i t h e r / n e i t h e r
	1 0 0 . 限定词与名词的搭配
	1 0 1 . 限定词之间的位置搭配 (三种限定词)
	1 0 2 . 限定词与形容词的区别
第十二章	主谓一致
	1 0 3 . 单数形式的名词作主语与谓语动词形式的关系
	1 0 4 . 复数形式的名词作主语与谓语动词形式的关系
	1 0 5 . 并列主语与谓语动词形式的关系
	1 0 6 . 在 o f 结构中谓语动词的单复数
	1 0 7 . 从句中的主谓一致问题
附录页	